

Thank you for purchasing this Factory Service Manual CD/DVD from servicemanuals4u.com.

Please check out our eBay auctions for more great deals on Factory Service Manuals:

[servicemanuals4u](http://servicemanuals4u.com)



Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under "Notices" on page 335.

First Edition (September 1995)

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE LIMITED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer or express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time.

It is possible that this publication may contain reference to, or information about, IBM products (machines and programs), programming, or services that are not announced in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that IBM intends to announce such IBM products, programming, or services in your country.

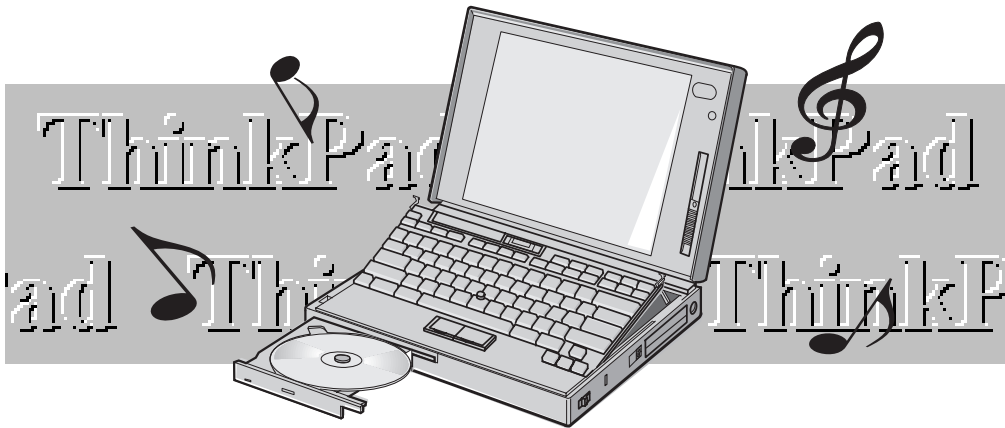
Requests for technical information about IBM products should be made to your IBM Authorized Dealer or your IBM Marketing Representative.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, 500 Columbus Avenue, Thornwood, NY 10594, U.S.A.

Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1995. All rights reserved. Note to US Government Users – Documentation related to restricted rights – Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Thank You for Selecting an IBM ThinkPad 760CD Computer

The IBM ThinkPad 760CD
is one of the leading notebook-size computers available today.
With its fast response, long battery hours,
built-in CD-ROM, brilliant display, and
high-technology features, we guarantee that it will
serve your
multimedia and
mobile computing needs.



The following are the distinctive system features of the IBM ThinkPad 760CD computer.



1 Mwave DSP Audio, Telephony, and Data/Fax Modem Features: Page 71.

16-bit high-quality audio, telephone, and fax machine functions are provided with a built-in speaker and microphone to complete the multimedia computing solution.

2 Infrared Communication: Page 68.

Two infrared ports for wireless serial communication are supplied with your computer.

3 ThinkPad Features Program: Page 38.

The ThinkPad Features program allows you to set various parameters by using a graphical user interface or commands.

4 Enhanced Video/MPEG Features: Page 83.

The Enhanced Video and MPEG Features let you capture video clips or make video presentations by using the in/out video ports and playing back MPEG motion videos, CD-I movies, or video CDs.

5 Power Management: Page 123.

Power Management sets the computer to different modes to save battery power when you are not using the computer. It also provides a resume function, which quickly returns you to where you left off.

6 Security Features: Page 133.

The computer provides security passwords for the computer and hard disk drive. Lock security also is provided for internal devices. The Personalization Utilities can help identify your computer.

7 Fn Key Function: Page 51.

The combination of this Fn key with a function key is used to control display modes, speaker volume, or battery power-saving modes.

8 TFT Color LCD: Page 194.

A large and brilliant thin-film transistor (TFT) color LCD supports various colors in many resolutions.

9 Easy-Setup: Page 44.

The built-in system programs in Easy-Setup allow the basic setup of your computer.

1 TrackPoint III: Page 26.

Pointing, selecting, and dragging all become part of a single process without lifting your hands from the TrackPoint III keyboard.

11 PCMCIA Support: Page 53.

The computer provides two Personal Computer Memory Card International Association (PCMCIA) slots. PCMCIA software is also provided so that you can use PC Cards more easily and conveniently.

12 Long-Life Battery Pack: Page 107.

The operating time of the computer is extended with the long-life battery pack.

About This Book

This *User's Guide* contains information that will help you operate the IBM ThinkPad 760CD computer (hereafter called *760CD* or *computer*).

Chapter 1, "Getting Started" provides information about the *Product Map* and the procedure to set up your computer.

Chapter 2, "Getting Familiar with Your Computer" acquaints you with the features of your computer.

Chapter 3, "Operating Your Computer" provides information on using your computer with its different features.

Chapter 4, "Using Battery Power" provides battery information and describes how to operate your computer with the battery pack.

Chapter 5, "Protecting Your Computer" provides information for protecting your computer and internal devices against unauthorized use.

Chapter 6, "Installing and Removing Options" describes how to install or remove IBM options.

Chapter 7, "Installing Software" provides procedures for installing operating systems and device drivers in your computer.

Chapter 8, "Solving Computer Problems" describes what to do when you have a computer problem.

Appendix A, "Avoiding Hardware Conflicts" lists some steps you can take to avoid problems when you add or remove options.

Appendix B, "Advanced Information for PC Cards" provides additional information when using PC Cards.

Appendix C, "Additional Information for Mwave DSP Features" provides additional information when using the Mwave functions.

Appendix D, "Using PS2 Commands" provides the PS2 commands for the ThinkPad Features program.

Appendix E, "MPEG Specifications and Commands" provides the MPEG specifications and commands for the Windows MPEG driver.

Appendix F, "Features and Specifications" describes the features and specifications associated with your computer.

Appendix G, "Product Warranties and Notices" contains the warranty statements of your computer and notices for this book.

Information Notices

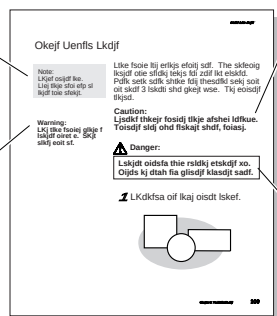
This *User's Guide* contains notices that relate to specific information or text.

Note

Provides important hints, tips, guidance, or advice.

Warning

Indicates possible damage to programs, devices, system, or data. It appears next to the related instruction or situation in which possible damage could occur.



Caution

Indicates situations that are potentially hazardous to you. It appears in text before the instruction or situation that could be hazardous.

Danger

Indicates situations that are potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to you. It is indicated by the symbol  and appears in text before the instruction or situation that could be dangerous.

Treatment of Icons

This *User's Guide* contains the following icons (symbols) representing procedures or information unique to the operating system installed in your computer, and to referenced information.



Information for IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) users.



Information for Microsoft** Windows** users.



Information for IBM DOS users.



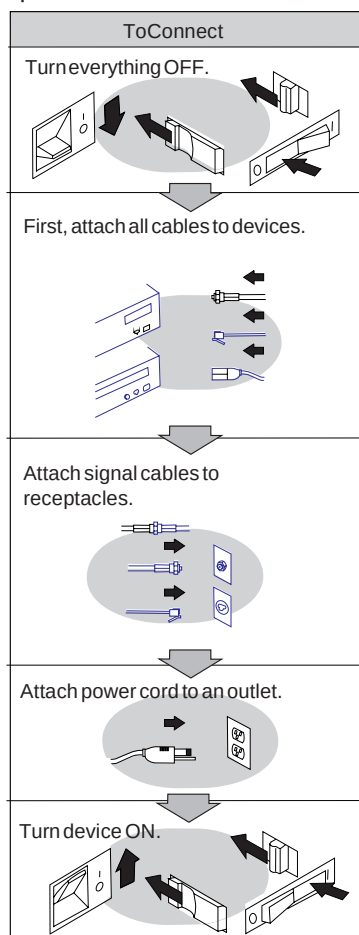
Where to go for referenced information.

Electrical Safety Notice

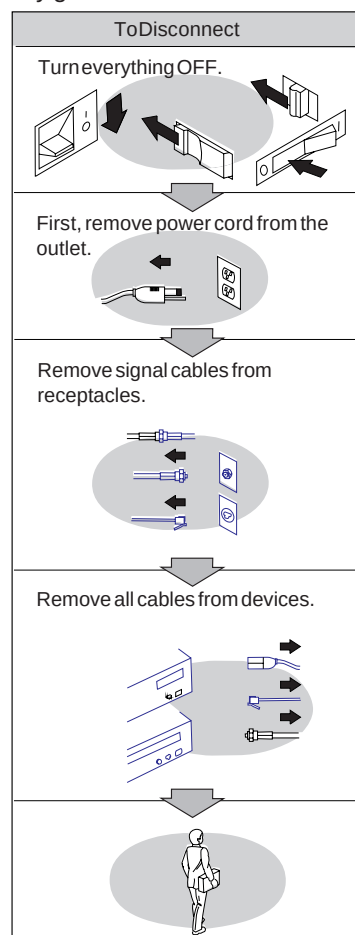


DANGER:

Electrical current from power, telephone, and communication cables is hazardous. To avoid shock hazard, connect and disconnect cables as shown below when installing, moving or opening the covers of this product or attached devices. The power cord must be used with a properly grounded outlet.



Note: In the U.K., by law, the telephone line cable must be connected after the power cord.



Note: In the U.K., by law, the power cord must be disconnected after the telephone line cable.



DANGER

Do not disassemble, incinerate, or short-circuit the rechargeable battery pack. Do not put it in trash that is disposed of in landfills. Dispose of it as required by local ordinances or regulations.

CAUTION:

The lithium battery (IBM P/N 29H8924, UL-recognized component—File No. MH12210), can only be replaced by your dealer or an IBM service representative. It contains lithium and can explode if not properly used, handled, or disposed of. Do not: (1) throw or immerse into water, (2) heat to more than 100°C (212°F), or (3) repair, or disassemble. Dispose of it as required by local ordinances or regulations.

CAUTION:

The nickel metal hydride rechargeable battery can only be replaced by your dealer or an IBM service representative. Do not disassemble, incinerate, or short-circuit it. The battery can cause burns or release toxic chemicals. Do not put it in trash that is disposed of in landfills. Dispose of it as required by local ordinances and regulations.

CAUTION:

The fluorescent lamp in the liquid crystal display (LCD) contains mercury. Do not put it in trash that is disposed of in landfills. Dispose of it as required by local ordinances or regulations.

The LCD is made of glass, and rough handling or dropping the computer can cause the LCD to break. If the LCD breaks and the internal fluid gets into your eyes or on your hands, immediately wash the affected areas with water for at least 15 minutes; then get medical care if any symptoms are present after washing.

Laser Compliance Statement

The CD-ROM drive in the IBM ThinkPad 760CD is a laser product. The CD-ROM drive's classification label (shown below) is located on the top of the drive.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
LASER KLASSE 1
LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE
APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASSE 1
KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT

The CD-ROM drive is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of the Department of Health and Human Services 21 Code of Federal Regulations (DHHS 21 CFR) Subchapter J for Class I laser products.

In other countries, the drive is certified to conform to the requirements of EN60825.



CAUTION:

Do not open the drive; no user adjustments or serviceable parts are inside.

Use of controls, adjustments or the performance of procedures other than those specified may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Class I (1) laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The CD-ROM drive has an internal, Class I (1), 0.5-milliwatt, aluminum gallium-arsenide laser that operates at a wavelength of 760 to 810 nanometers. The design of the laser system and the CD-ROM drive ensures that there is no exposure to laser radiation above a Class I (1) level during normal operation, user maintenance, or servicing conditions.

Contents

About This Book	vi
Information Notices	vii
Treatment of Icons	vii
Electrical Safety Notice	viii
Laser Compliance Statement	x
Chapter 1. Getting Started	1
Overall Setup Procedures	2
About the Product Map	4
Checking Your Items	4
Other Symbols on the Product Map	6
Setting Up Your Computer	7
Chapter 2. Getting Familiar with Your Computer	15
Identifying the Hardware Features	16
System-Status Indicators	20
Indicator Lamps	20
LCD Indicator	21
Providing Power	23
AC Adapter	23
Battery Pack	24
Car Battery Adapter	25
Operating with the TrackPoint III	26
Changing the Cap	28
Operating the Numeric Keypad	29
Using the Display	30
Using a DOS Application with Your Computer	31
Viewing the Online Book	32
Starting in OS/2 or Windows	32
Starting in DOS	32
Keeping the Computer from Being Damaged	33
Carrying the Computer	34
Chapter 3. Operating Your Computer	35
What Happens When Power Is Turned On?	37
Using the ThinkPad Features Program	38
Starting the ThinkPad Features Program	39
Using Easy-Setup	44
Starting Easy-Setup	44
Using the Selectable Drive-Startup Sequence	49

Using the Fn Key	51
Using PC Cards	53
PC Card Limitations under Suspend Mode	53
Using the PC Card Director Program	54
Starting PC Card Director for OS/2 or Windows	55
Starting PC Card Director for DOS	67
Using the Infrared Communication Feature	68
Considerations for Communication	70
Using the Mwave DSP Features	71
Using the Audio Function	74
Using the Telephony Function	78
Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features	83
Considerations When Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features	84
Using Smooth Playback	84
Using MPEG Playback	86
Using the Video-Out Feature	88
Using the Video-In Feature, Video Capture, and Video Overlay	90
Considerations When Using the Video-In Feature and Video Capture	91
Capturing Video Files or Still Images	92
Capturing, Compressing, and Building a Video File	92
Capturing a Still Image	96
Using the Overlay with Media Player in Windows	98
Using the Diskette Drive	99
Using the CD-ROM Drive	102
Playing Media	104
Handling Compact Discs	105
Using the MIDI/Joystick Port	106
 Chapter 4. Using Battery Power	 107
Charging the Battery Pack	108
Charging with the AC Adapter	108
Charging with the Quick Charger	109
Replacing the Battery Pack	110
Monitoring the Battery Status	112
Using the Battery Status Indicator	112
Using the Fuel-Gauge Program	116
Preserving Battery-Pack Life	120
Maximizing Battery-Powered Operation	120

Using Advanced Power Management	121
Decreasing LCD Brightness	123
Using the Battery Power-Management Function	123
Chapter 5. Protecting Your Computer	133
Using Passwords	134
Power-On Password	134
Hard Disk Password	139
Supervisor Password	144
Using the Personalization Feature	151
Entering the Personal Information	152
Deleting a Personalized Screen	154
Using Locks	155
Using the Security Lock	155
Using the PC Card Lock	157
Chapter 6. Installing and Removing Options	161
Installing and Removing PC Cards	162
Inserting the PC Card	163
Removing the PC Card	165
Increasing Memory Capacity	166
Installing and Removing the DIMM	166
Replacing the Hard Disk Drive	173
Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay	176
Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay	180
Installing an Option in the UltraBay	184
Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit	187
Attaching an External Numeric Keypad or a Mouse	191
Using the Mouse and Other Pointing Devices	192
Attaching an External Keyboard	193
Attaching an External Display	194
Changing the Display Mode	195
Setting the Monitor Type and the Display Driver	196
Connecting an External Display to the Computer	197
Changing the Screen Resolution or Color Depth	197
Attaching an IBM Dock I or Dock II Expansion Unit	199
Chapter 7. Installing Software	201
What You Need for Your Computer	202
Installing the Operating System	204

Installing Software for OS/2	205
Installing IBM OS/2 Warp Version 3 or Later	205
Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2	212
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for OS/2	214
Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for OS/2	215
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2	216
Installing the Infrared Device Driver for OS/2	218
Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2 or WIN-OS/2	220
Installing the MPEG Device Driver for OS/2	222
Installing the ThinkPad Display Device Driver for OS/2	223
Installing Software for DOS	224
Installing IBM PC DOS Version 7.0 or Later	224
Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS	224
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for DOS	227
Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for DOS	228
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for DOS	230
Installing Software for Windows	232
Installing Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 or Later	233
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for Windows	237
Installing the PCMCIA Features for Windows	238
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows	240
Installing the MIDI Port Device Driver for Windows	242
Installing the Infrared Device Driver for Windows	243
Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for Windows	244
Installing the MPEG Device Driver for Windows	245
Installing the IBM Video CD Player for Windows	247
Installing the ThinkPad Display Driver for Windows	248
 Chapter 8. Solving Computer Problems	 249
Commonly Asked Questions and Problems	251
Common Problems and Actions	251
Frequently Asked Questions and Answers	254
Testing the Computer	255
Troubleshooting Charts	257
Error Codes	257
LCD Problems	259
Screen Messages	261
Other General Problems	262
What If Testing Cannot Find the Problem?	264

Battery Power Problems	264
CD-ROM Drive Problems	265
Diskette Drive Problems	266
Enhanced Video Feature Problems	266
External Display Problems	267
Hibernation Problems	268
Infrared Communication Problems	268
Keyboard, External Numeric Keypad, and Pointing Device Problems	270
Mwave DSP Feature Problems	271
Option Problems	273
PC Card Problems	274
Printer Problems	275
Software Problems	276
Getting Service	277
Listing Installed Options	278
Recording Identification Numbers	278
The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (in the U.S.A.) . .	279
The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (for European Countries)	281
Appendix A. Avoiding Hardware Conflicts	283
List of System Resources	283
Avoiding System Resource Conflicts When Using PC Cards . .	286
Doing a Network Remote Program Load	286
Starting the Computer from an ATA PC Card	287
Appendix B. Advanced Information for PC Cards	289
Auto Configurator for PC Card Director	289
Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows .	289
Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for DOS	293
Adding to the CONFIG.SYS File	293
Registered Drivers and Standard Rules for OS/2	294
Registered Drivers and Standard Rules for DOS and Windows	296
Storage Card Device Driver	298
PCMCIA Storage Card Device Driver for OS/2	298
PCMCIA Storage Card Device Driver for DOS and Windows	298
Before Using PCMCIA Storage Cards	298
Using PCMCIA ATA Cards with Multiple Partitions	299

Parameters for the OS/2 PCMCIA ATA Card Device Driver	299
Parameters for DOS PCMCIA Storage Card Device Drivers	300
PCMCIA Storage Card Device Manager for OS/2	302
OS/2 PCMCIA Storage API Device Driver	302
Flash Card Memory Technology Driver	302
Checking the Allocated Resources for the PC Card	303
Avoiding PC Card Resource Conflicts	305

Appendix C. Additional Information for Mwave DSP

Features	307
Audio Information	307
Sound	307
Mwave MIDI Overview	308
Telephony Information	311

Appendix D. Using PS2 Commands 313

Appendix E. MPEG Specifications and Commands 321

MPEG Clip Specification	321
MCI Commands Supported by Windows MPEG Driver	321

Appendix F. Features and Specifications 325

Features	325
Specifications	327
IBM Power Cords	328
Diskette Standards	330

Appendix G. Product Warranties and Notices 331

Notices	335
Trademarks	335
Electronic Emission Notice	337
Telecommunication Notice	339

Glossary 341

Index 345

Chapter 1. Getting Started

Welcome to the world of ThinkPad computers!

The ThinkPad 760CD computer is designed to meet your multimedia and mobile computing needs. It provides you with various features, unique to IBM products, which help your everyday work go easy and smoothly. You can use your ThinkPad 760CD computer in the office or at home as a desktop computer by attaching an external keyboard, display, or other external devices. And, of course, your computer can be easily carried wherever you need a computer “on the go.”

This chapter describes the *Product Map* and gives step-by-step instructions to help you set up your new computer.

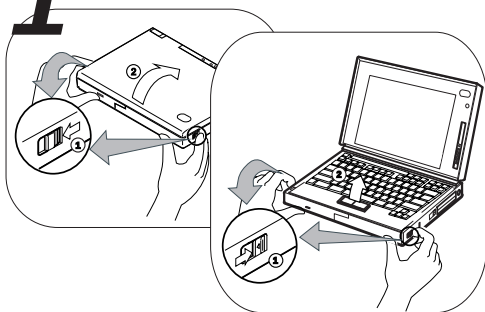
Overall Setup Procedures	2
About the Product Map	4
Checking Your Items	4
Other Symbols on the Product Map	6
Setting Up Your Computer	7

Getting Started

Overall Setup Procedures

When using the computer for the first time:

1



Set Up the Computer

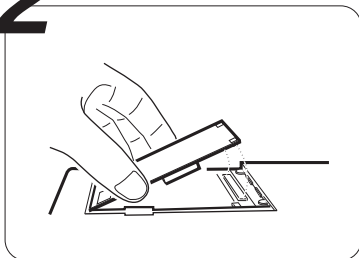
First, open the Product Map and check whether you have all the necessary items with your computer.

See page 4.

Then, install the battery pack in the computer. Now you are ready to turn on the computer.

See page 7.

2

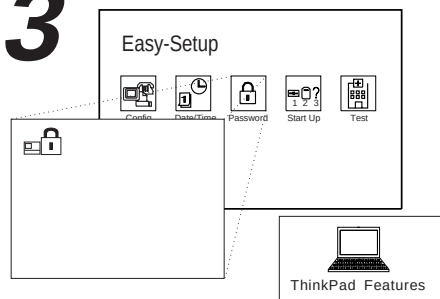


Install Options

If you have any options, such as memory cards, install the options.

See page 161.

3



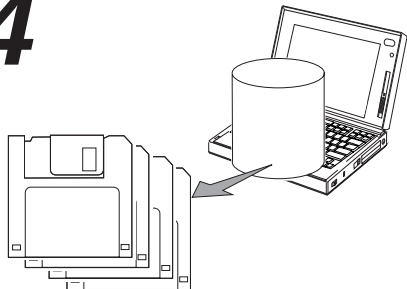
Customize Your Computer

You can use *Easy-Setup*, a built-in system function, to set passwords to prevent your computer from unauthorized use, or use the *ThinkPad Features* program to customize the performance of your computer.

For Easy-Setup, see page 44.

For the ThinkPad Features program, see page 38.

4

**Make a Backup of Your System**

Your computer comes with the necessary software already installed for you to use the computer right out of the box. However, on some computers, the *Diskette Factory* program is installed so you can create backup diskettes. On other computers, you will find utility and device driver diskettes packed in the box with the computer.

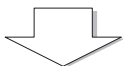
If your computer did not come with the utility and device driver diskettes, make a backup copy of all necessary files using the Diskette Factory. This way, if you ever need to reinstall the operating system, you will have all the necessary software you need to restore your computer to the way it was at the time of purchase.

Do you need more hard disk space?

If your computer did not come with the utility and device driver diskettes, and *you have already made a backup copy of all necessary software using the Diskette Factory*, you can delete any preinstalled software you do not want to use to have more free hard disk space.

Click on the **Diskette Factory** icon; then follow the instructions on the screen.

You can also delete the demonstration program.

**You are ready to use your computer.**

If you have any application programs to install, follow the instructions in the documentation that came with those programs.

If you are reinstalling the operating system...

If you are reinstalling the operating system to customize your computer, follow the instructions on page 201.

 If you have any problems after you have customized your computer, refer to "Commonly Asked Questions and Problems" on page 251 to solve your problem.

Getting Started

About the Product Map

The Product Map is the fold-out diagram that you first see when you unpack the computer. When you physically place the computer on the Map, you will see an overview of the computer system.

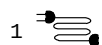
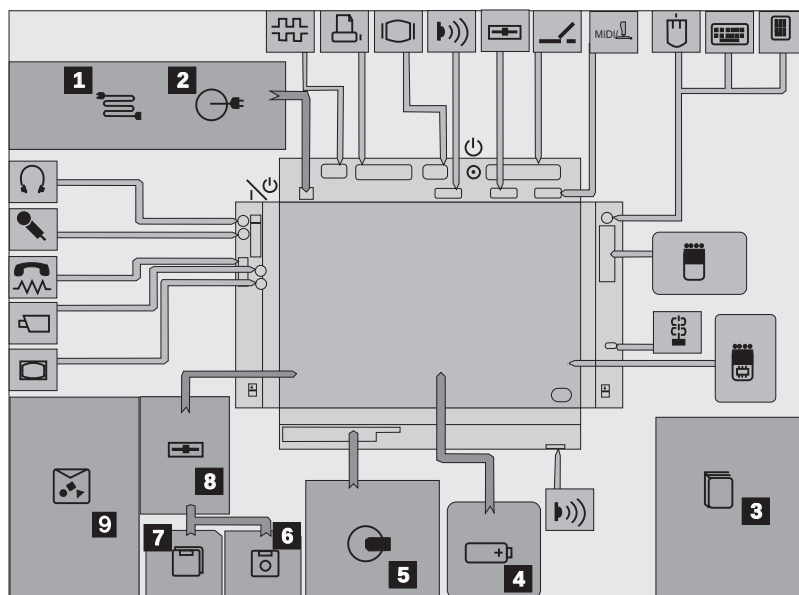


Checking Your Items

Start checking the shipped items by using the Product Map.

- 1** Remove the Product Map from the box and spread it on a desk or flat surface.
- 2** Remove the items from the box, one by one, and match them with the corresponding numbers in the figure on page 5.

Make sure that no items are missing. If any item is missing or damaged, contact your place of purchase.



The **Power Cord** connects the AC Adapter to the electrical outlet. Some AC Adapters are not shipped with a power cord.



The **AC Adapter** plugs into an electrical outlet and supplies power to the computer.



The **User's Guide** is this book. It provides the installing and operating information you need for your computer.



The **Battery Pack** supplies power to the computer for mobile operation.



The **ThinkPad Media Library** is a sample CD-ROM that includes audio and video clips. (Available in some countries.)



The **Utility Diskette** contains various system programs.



The **Driver Diskettes** contain the device drivers.



The **Internal Diskette Drive** reads data from or writes data to a diskette. It is installed in the UltraBay when the CD-ROM drive is removed. You can also attach it externally to the external-diskette-drive connector.



The **Miscellaneous Items Envelope** contains:

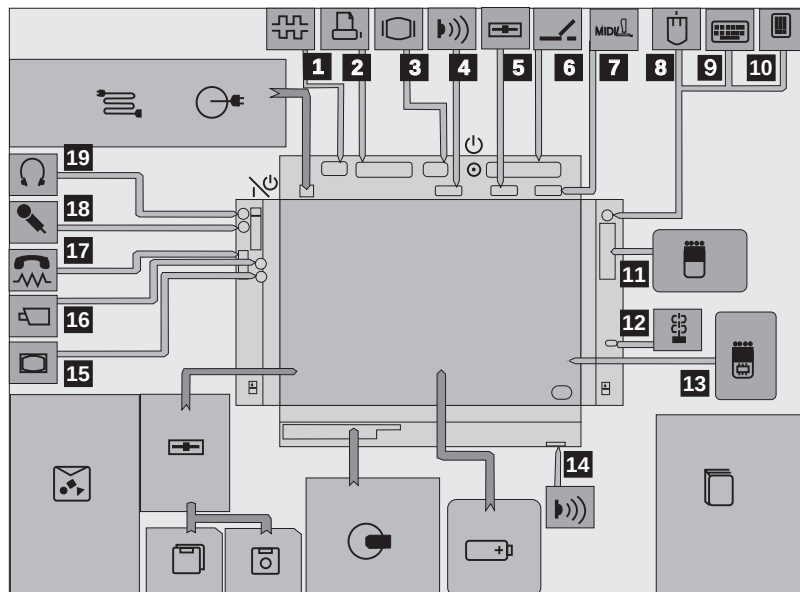
- MIDI/Joystick cable
- Two video In/out cables
- Telephone cable
- Spare caps for TrackPoint III
- Spacer
- PC (PCMCIA) Card lock
- CD-ROM eject pin
- Other items

† In some countries, backup diskettes should be created using the Diskette Factory program when the computer power is turned on for the first time. Follow the instructions for "Building System Diskettes" in the *Preload Guide* supplied with the computer.

Getting Started

Other Symbols on the Product Map

This section describes the slots, connectors, and options that are shown on the Product Map. To install options, refer to Chapter 6, "Installing and Removing Options" on page 161.



1 
The **Serial Connector** connects a 9-pin, serial-device cable.

2 
The **Parallel Connector** usually connects a parallel-printer signal cable.

3 
The **External-Display Connector** connects the signal cable of a video graphics adapter (VGA), super video graphics adapter (SVGA), or compatible display.

4 / 14 
The **Infrared Port** is where data between computers or systems is transferred using infrared (IR) technology, without connecting cables.

5 
The **External-Diskette-Drive Connector** connects the cable from an external diskette drive (available as an option).

6 
The **System Expansion Connector** connects the expansion unit or port replicator.

7 
The **MIDI/Joystick Port** connects the MIDI/Joystick cable (supplied with the computer) or MIDI cables (purchase separately) when using a Joystick or MIDI equipment.

8 
An external **Mouse** connects directly to the external input-device connector or is used with the external numeric keypad.

9 
An **External Keyboard** connects to the external input-device connector through the keyboard/mouse connector.

1 
An **External Numeric Keypad** connects to the external input-device connector.



The **PCMCIA Slots** accept one or two Personal Computer Memory Card International Association (PCMCIA) cards (hereafter called *PC Cards*).



The **Locking Device Keyhole** attaches a Kensington** MicroSaver** Security System lock (hereafter called a *Kensington lock*) or compatible locks to secure your computer.



The **Memory Slot** accepts a dual inline memory module (DIMM) adapter with one or two DIMM memory options.

14

Infrared Port. See 4 .



The **Video Out Port** transfers data to video equipment. The port receives or accepts signals in composite video and S-video formats.



The **Video In Port** transfers data from video equipment. The port receives or accepts signals in composite video and S-video formats.



The **Modem/Fax Port** connects a modem or fax cable. (Available as an option in some countries.)



The **Microphone/Line-In Jack** is a 1/8-inch (3.5-mm) diameter jack that connects a stereo microphone or external audio device. A dynamic microphone or condenser microphone, operated by an external power source, or an equivalent audio device can be used. *The built-in microphone is disabled when you use this jack.*



The **Headphone Jack** is a 1/8-inch (3.5-mm) diameter jack that connects a stereo headphone or external speakers.

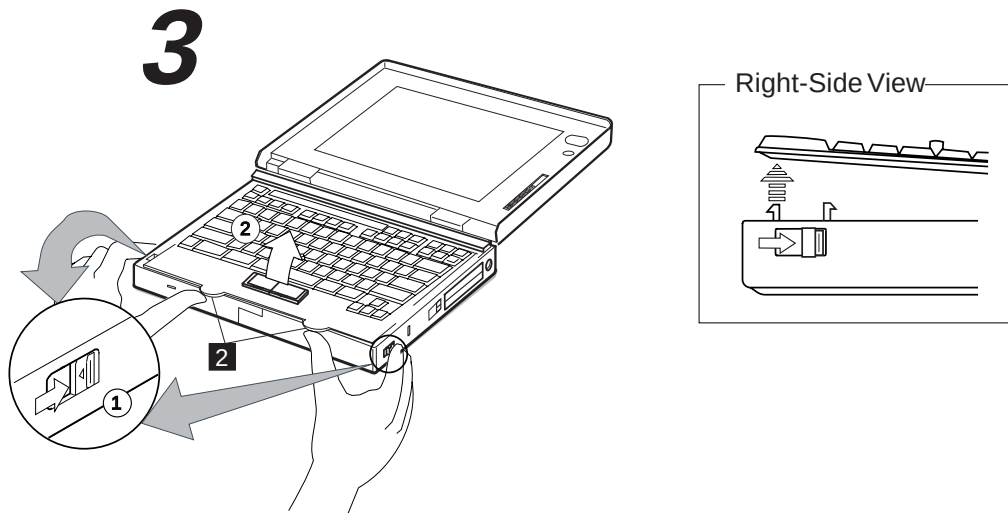
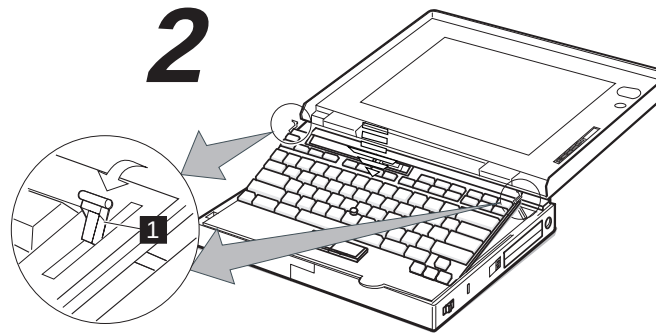
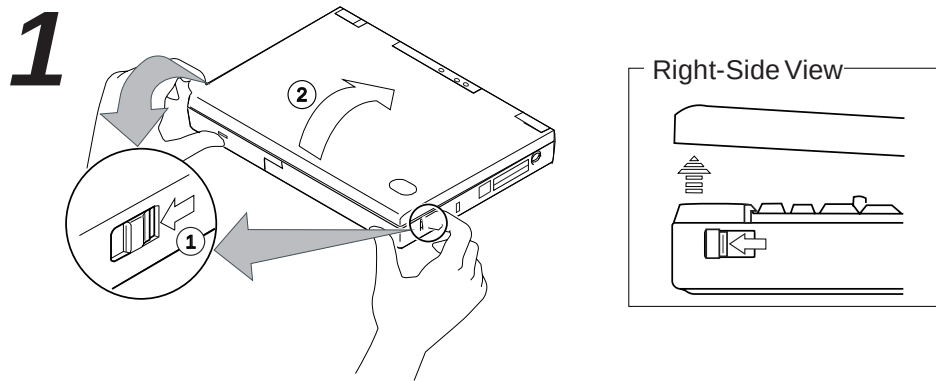
Warning: *To avoid possible loss of hearing, do not wear the headphones while you turn on the computer or connect the headphones to this jack.*

Setting Up Your Computer

You are now ready to assemble and start your computer. The steps on the next few pages will guide you through the process. The following conventions are used in the steps and illustrations that appear in the Getting Started section.

- 1** Indicates the main sequence of actions. This number in a step corresponds to the same number in a figure.
- ① Indicates subsequent actions that follow a main action. An arrow accompanying a circled number shows the direction of movement.

Getting Started



To install the battery pack:

- 1** Slide the latches on both sides of the computer toward the front, and open the liquid crystal display (LCD).

(Do 1 and 2.)

When the LCD opens, the keyboard is slanted slightly at an easy typing angle.

- 2** Slide the keyboard raiser 1 on both sides of the keyboard toward you, and push the keyboard down so it lies flat on the computer.

(Do 1 and 2.)

Warning:

Always push the keyboard down flat on the computer whenever you open the keyboard.

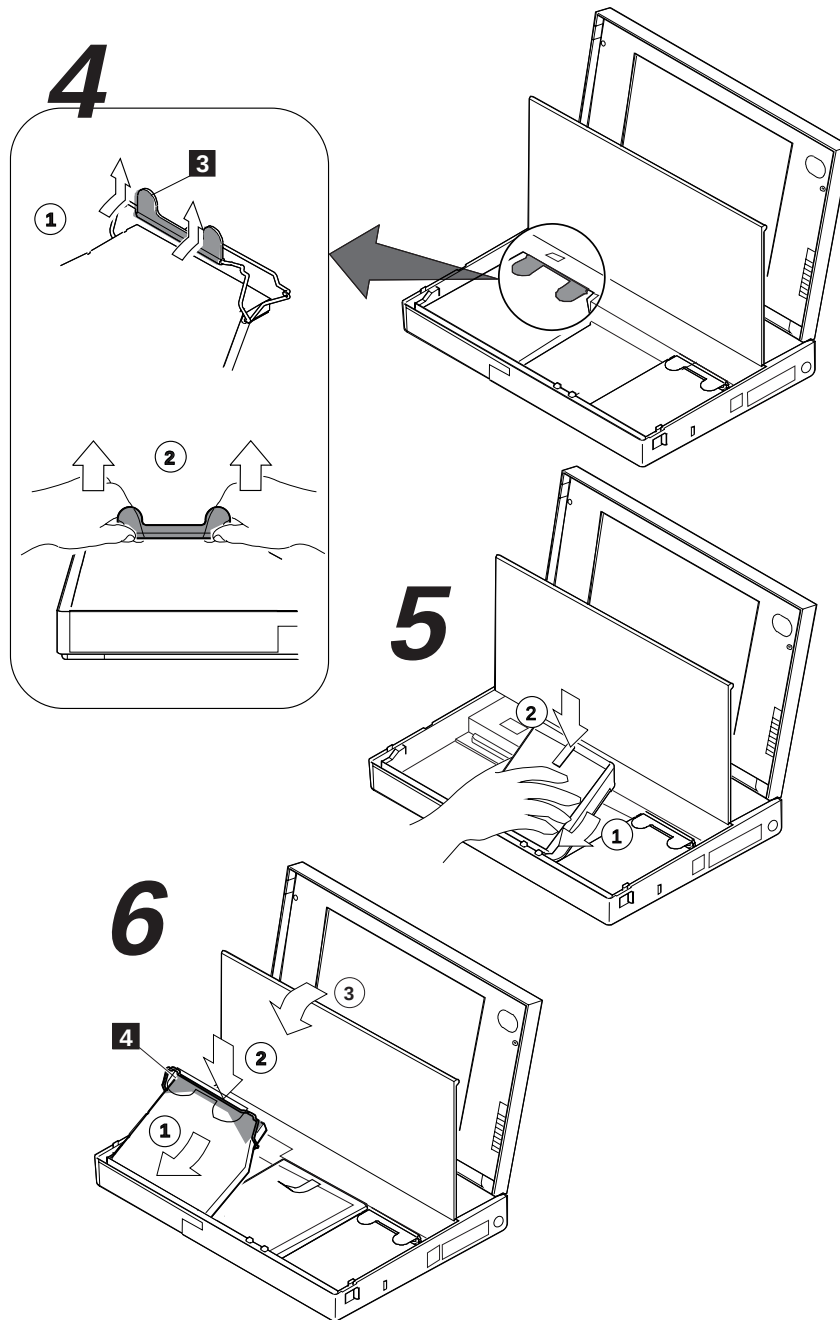
- 3** Push the same latches used in step 1 on both sides of the computer further away from you; then raise the keyboard.

(Do 1 and 2.)

Some pressure might be needed to slide these latches if they are tight.

You can use the tabs 2 on the front of the keyboard to easily open the keyboard.

Getting Started



- 4** Lift the CD-ROM handle with the plastic tape 3 and remove the CD-ROM drive from the computer.

(Do 1 and 2.)

Some pressure might be needed to remove the CD-ROM drive if it is tight.



The battery pack provided with your computer contains a small amount of harmful substances. To avoid possible injury:

- Keep the battery pack away from fire.**
- Do not soak the battery pack in water or expose it to rain.**
- Do not attempt to disassemble the battery pack.**
- Avoid mechanical shocks to the battery.**
- Always use battery packs recommended by IBM.**
- Keep the battery pack away from children.**

When disposing of the battery, comply with local regulations or your company's safety standards.

- 5** Install the battery pack with the blue-strap side up into the middle (empty) bay, and press it firmly into the connector.

(Do 1 and 2.)

Warning:

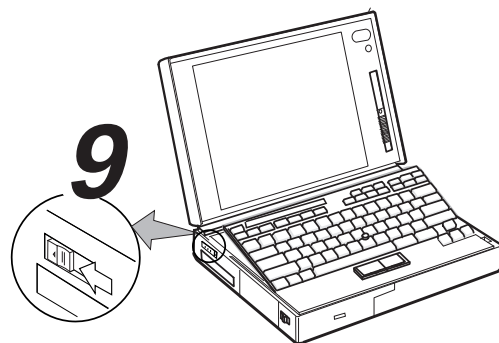
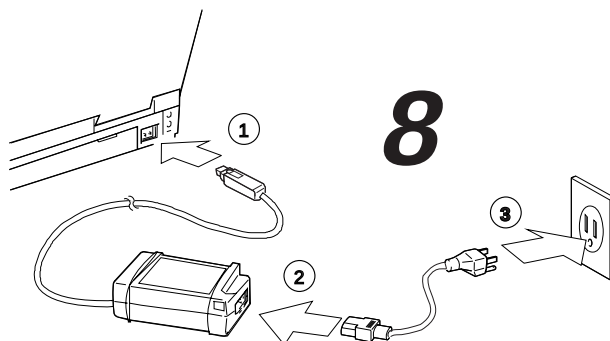
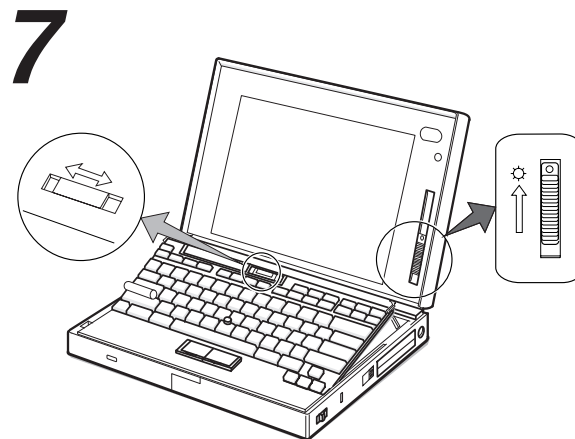
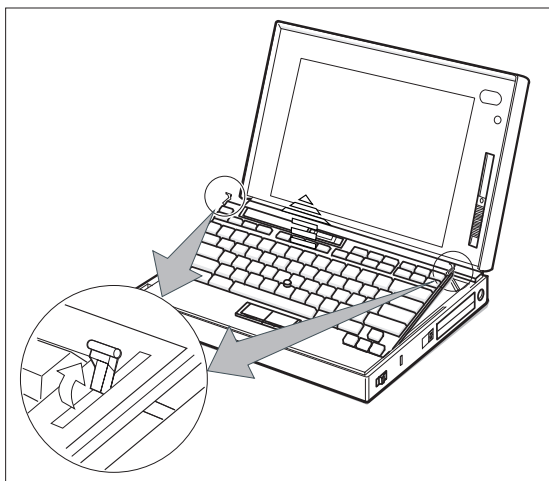
When installing the CD-ROM drive, press only on the upper part of the CD-ROM drive. Do not press on the middle part of the drive.

- 6** Install the CD-ROM drive into its bay and press the upper part of it (shaded area 4) firmly into the connector; then close the keyboard.

(Do 1, 2, and 3.)

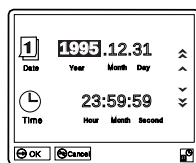
Make sure the CD-ROM handle snaps into place when doing step 2 and the keyboard clicks into place when you close it.

Getting Started



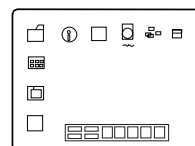
You can raise the keyboard to an angle for easy typing by sliding the keyboard raiser (used in step 2 on page 9) away from you.

- 7** Position the LCD so that it is convenient for viewing; then slide the speaker volume control to the middle position and position the brightness control (☀) as shown.
- 8** Connect the AC Adapter as shown.
(Do **1**, **2**, and **3**.)
- 9** Push and release the power switch to turn on the computer.
The power switch automatically returns to its original position after you push and release it.
- 10** After a single beep, one of the following screens appears, confirming that the system is operating correctly.



Date and Time menu

This screen instructs you to set the initial date and time. To set the date and time, see “Using Easy-Setup” on page 44.



Startup screen

If you purchased a computer with a preinstalled operating system, the startup screen for the operating system appears. (The screen shown is an example of an operating system screen.)

A demonstration program might run automatically.

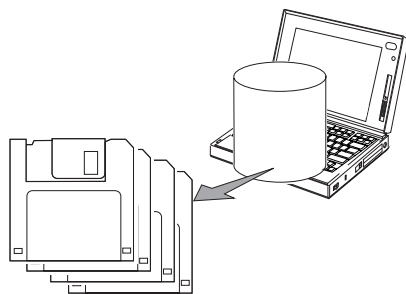
If any other screen appears, a failure might have occurred in the computer. See Chapter 8, “Solving Computer Problems” on page 249.

Congratulations! You have successfully completed the basic setup of your computer.

Getting Started

You can now start using your computer or continue reading Chapter 2, "Getting Familiar with Your Computer" on page 15 for more information about your computer.

Important



It is recommended that you make a backup copy of the files on the hard disk drive, in case you accidentally erase preinstalled software or intentionally modify the hard disk drive. You can use the backup copy to restore your computer to the way it was at the time of purchase.

In some countries, you can create the device driver diskettes you need to install all necessary software, using the Diskette Factory program. Follow the instructions for "Building System Diskettes" in the *Preload Guide* supplied with your computer.

Chapter 2. Getting Familiar with Your Computer

This chapter provides basic information about your computer.

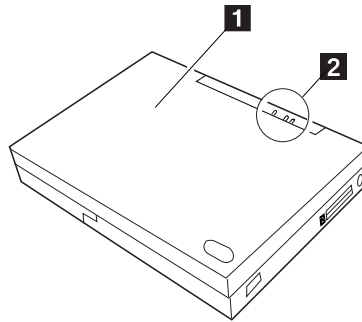
Identifying the Hardware Features	16
System-Status Indicators	20
Indicator Lamps	20
LCD Indicator	21
Providing Power	23
AC Adapter	23
Battery Pack	24
Car Battery Adapter	25
Operating with the TrackPoint III	26
Changing the Cap	28
Operating the Numeric Keypad	29
Using the Display	30
Using a DOS Application with Your Computer	31
Viewing the Online Book	32
Starting in OS/2 or Windows	32
Starting in DOS	32
Keeping the Computer from Being Damaged	33
Carrying the Computer	34

Identifying the Hardware Features

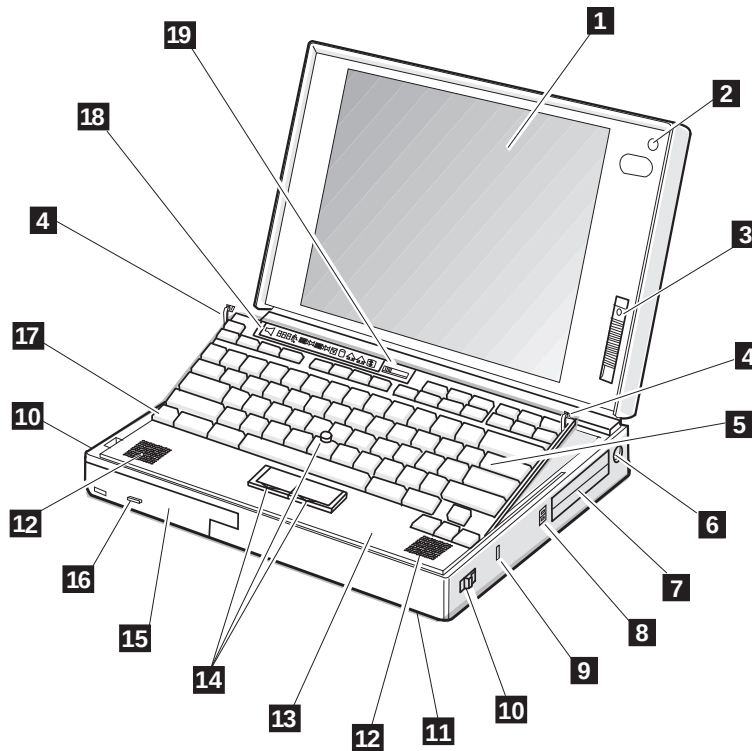
Identifying the Hardware Features

In this section, you can review the hardware features of your computer.

Top View



Front View



Identifying the Hardware Features

Top View

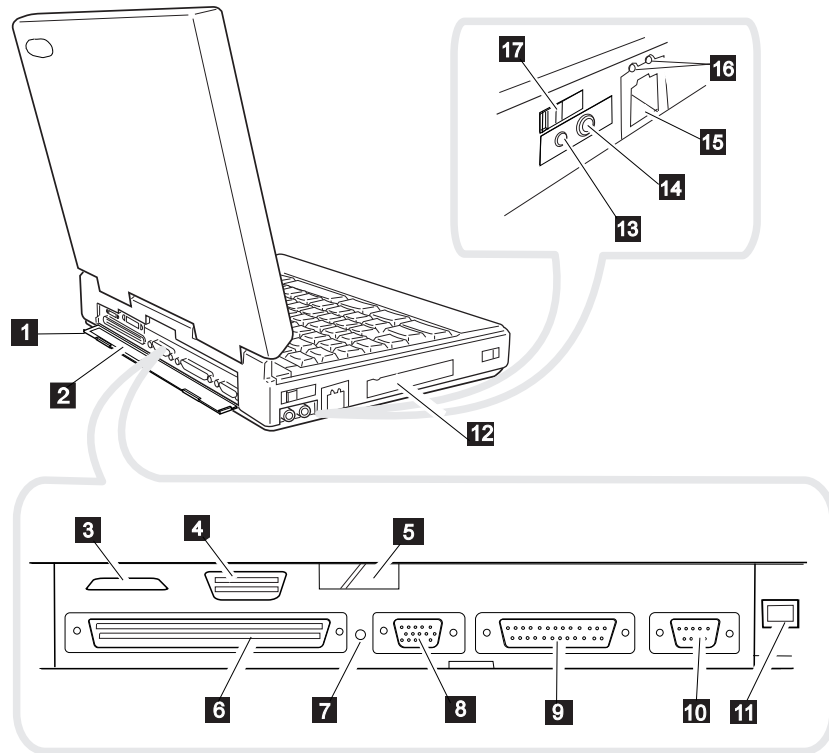
- 1 The **top cover** holds the computer display also.
- 2 The **indicator lamps** consist of the power-on, suspend, and battery-status lamps. (See page 20.)

Front View

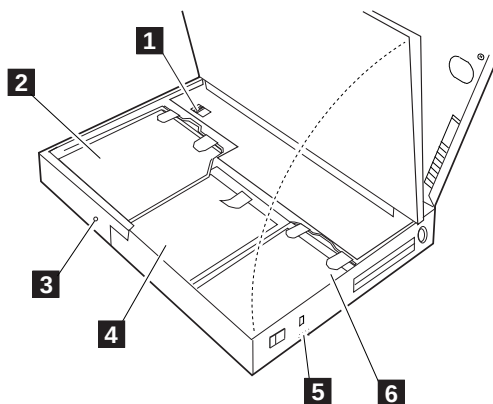
- 1 The **color LCD screen**, which uses thin-film transistor (TFT) technology, displays the computer output and can be moved to any desired viewing angle. SVGA (800-by-600 resolution) video mode is supported with 65536 colors on the LCD. (See page 30.)
A maximum of 1024-by-768 resolution video can be produced with 256 colors on any attached external display that supports this resolution mode. (See page 194.)
- 2 The **built-in microphone** captures sound and voice when it is used with an application program capable of handling an audio or telephony function. (See page 71.)
- 3 The **brightness control** moves up or down to adjust the brightness of the display.
- 4 The **keyboard raisers** are used to lay the keyboard flat before opening the keyboard. (See page 13.)
- 5 The **keyboard** is used to enter data into the computer. To use the numeric keypad on the keyboard, see page 29.
- 6 The **external-input-device connector** is used to attach a mouse, external keyboard, or external numeric keypad to the computer. (See pages 191–193.)
- 7 The **PCMCIA slots** accept one or two PC Cards. (See page 162.)
- 8 The **PC Card eject buttons** eject the PC Card from the PCMCIA slot. (See page 165.)
- 9 The **security keyhole** is used with a Kensington lock or a compatible lock to protect your computer. (See page 155.)
- 1 The **release latches** release the LCD or keyboard. Sliding them toward the front opens the LCD, and sliding them towards the back opens the keyboard.
- 11 The **front infrared port** allows the computer to communicate with other devices that have infrared data-transfer capability. (See page 68.)
- 12 The **built-in speakers** reproduce stereo sound for your application programs.
- 13 The **palm rest** is where you rest the palms of your hands when using the keyboard.
- 14 The **TrackPoint III** is a built-in pointing device that provides a function similar to that of a mouse. It consists of a pointing stick and two click buttons. (See page 26.)
- 15 The **removable CD-ROM drive** installed in the **UltraBay** reads data from a 5-inch CD-ROM at quadruple (4X) speed. (To replace with the removable diskette drive, see page 99. To install options in the UltraBay, see page 184.)
- 16 The **CD-ROM eject button** ejects the CD-ROM tray from the CD-ROM drive. Using this button, you can play back, stop, or skip the CD-ROM set in the CD-ROM drive.
- 17 The **Fn key** is used with the function keys to activate the **Fn** key functions. (See page 51.)
- 18 The **LCD indicator panel** shows the current status of the computer and battery power with symbols and numeric information. (See page 21.)
- 19 The **volume control** adjusts the sound level for the built-in speakers.

Identifying the Hardware Features

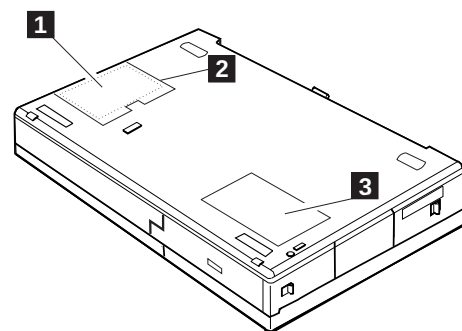
Rear View



Inside View



Bottom View



Identifying the Hardware Features

Rear View

- 1 The **rear door** covers the connectors at the rear of the computer.
- 2 The **connector door** allows you to connect a cable to the system-expansion connector when the rear door is closed.
- 3 The **MIDI/Joystick port** connects the MIDI/Joystick cable for MIDI cables when using a Joystick or MIDI equipment.
- 4 The **external-diskette-drive connector** connects the cable of the external diskette drive (available as an option) when using both the CD-ROM and diskette drives at the same time.
- 5 The **rear infrared port**. (See "front infrared port" on page 17.)
- 6 The **system-expansion connector** is used to connect the IBM Dock I, Dock II, or port replicator. (See page 199.)
- 7 The **power shutdown switch** is used to turn the computer off when an application locks up or the computer will not accept any input. Use the tip of a pen to press this switch.
- 8 The **external-display connector** is where you connect the signal cable of VGA, SVGA, or compatible display. (See page 194.)
- 9 The **parallel connector** is where you usually connect a parallel-printer signal cable.
- 1 The **serial connector** is where you connect a 9-pin, serial-device cable.
- 11 The **power jack** is where the AC Adapter cable is connected.
- 12 The **option cover** can be removed when options are used in the UltraBay.
- 13 The **headphone jack**, a 1/8-inch (3.5-mm) diameter jack, is where you connect a stereo headphone or external speakers. (See page 71.)
- 14 The **microphone/line-in jack**, a 1/8-inch (3.5-mm) diameter jack, is where a stereo microphone or external audio device is connected. (See page 71.)
- 15 The **modem/fax port** is where you connect a modem connector or attachment. This is offered as an option in some countries. (For use: see page 71. For installation: see page 187.)
- 16 The **video in/out ports** transfer data from or to video equipment. The ports receive or accept signal for composite video and S-video formats.
- 17 The **power switch** turns the computer on and off.

Inside View

- 1 The **modem/fax port release latch** releases the modem/fax port from the computer. (See page 187.)
- 2 The **removable CD-ROM drive**. (See page 17.)
- 3 The **CD-ROM emergency eject hole** ejects the CD-ROM tray when it does not open with the CD-ROM eject button. Insert the CD-ROM eject pin to eject the CD-ROM tray.
- 4 The **battery pack** allows you to operate the computer when ac power is not available. (See page 24.)
- 5 The **security latch** opens or closes the security keyhole. (See page 155.)
- 6 The **removable hard disk drive** can be replaced with one of a different capacity. (See page 173.)

Bottom View

- 1 The **memory slot** accepts one or two memory module (DIMM) options to increase the memory capacity of your computer. (See page 166.)
- 2 The **memory-slot cover** is opened when you insert DIMM options. (See page 166.)
- 3 The **serial number (S/N)** identifies your computer. Write it down on page 278.

System-Status Indicators

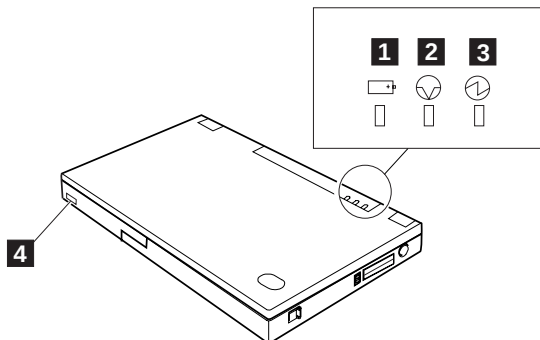
System-Status Indicators

The system-status indicators consist of three lamps and information shown on a black-and-white LCD panel.

Indicator Lamps

The indicator lamps show the computer status by their on or off states or by their colors (green or orange). Each indicator is identified by a symbol.

The indicator lamps, except for the CD-ROM drive in-use indicator, can be seen only when the LCD cover of the computer is closed.

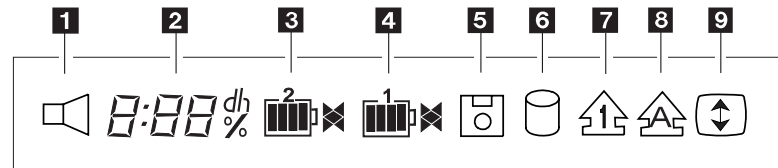


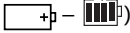
Symbol	Color	Meaning
1 Battery 	Green	Enough battery power remains for operation.
	Orange	The battery pack is being charged.
	Blinking orange	The battery pack needs charging. When the lamp starts blinking orange, the computer beeps three times.
2 Suspend mode 	Green	Indicates that the computer is in suspend mode. See page 123 for details about suspend mode.
	Blinking green	Indicates that the computer is entering suspend mode or hibernation mode, or is resuming normal operation.
3 Power on 	Green	Indicates that the computer is operational. This indicator is on when the computer is on and not in suspend mode.
4 CD-ROM drive in use 	Green	Turns on when data is read from a CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive. Do not enter suspend mode or eject the CD-ROM when this lamp is on.

LCD Indicator

The LCD indicator panel, which you can see when the LCD cover is open, shows the status of the computer and the battery pack installed in the computer.

The following shows the location and the meaning of each icon:



Icon	Meaning
1 Speaker 	When enabled in the ThinkPad Features program, this indicator appears when the speaker sounds. It turns off when any key is pressed. (To enable this indicator, see "Using the ThinkPad Features Program" on page 38.)
2 Remaining battery 	The amount of remaining battery power is shown by a percentage (%), day (d), hour (h), or numerical value (4:3). For details, see page 112.
3 Secondary battery status 	Indicates the status of the battery pack installed in the UltraBay. For details, see below.
4 Main battery status 	Indicates the following status of the battery pack in the battery pack bay. The amount of remaining power (in five levels: ) Charging status (<: charging, >: discharging, and (blank): no activity) For details, see page 112.
5 Diskette drive in use 	Appears when data is read from or written to a diskette. <i>Do not enter suspend mode or eject the diskette when this indicator appears.</i>
6 Hard disk in use 	Appears when data is read from or written to the hard disk. <i>Do not enter suspend mode or turn off the computer when this indicator appears.</i>
7 Numeric lock 	Indicates that the numeric keypad on the keyboard is enabled. The keypad is enabled and disabled by pressing and holding the Shift key, and pressing the NumLk key. For details, see "Operating the Numeric Keypad" on page 29.

System-Status Indicators

Icon	Meaning
8 Caps lock 	Indicates that the Caps Lock mode is enabled. All alphabetic characters (A–Z) are entered in capital letters without the use of the Shift key. The Caps Lock mode is enabled and disabled by pressing the Caps Lock key.
9 Scroll lock 	Alternately turns on and off each time the ScrLk key is pressed. While this indicator is on, the Arrow keys are used as screen-scroll function keys. In this state, the cursor cannot be moved with the Arrow keys. Not all application programs support this function.

Providing Power

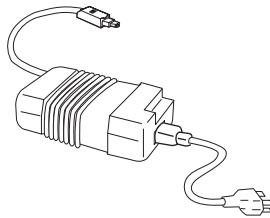
Your computer can be operated with the AC Adapter, battery pack, or Car Battery Adapter (available as an option).

AC Adapter

Note:

When the AC Adapter is connected, and the remaining power of the installed battery pack is less than a certain amount, discharging and then charging of the battery pack starts automatically.

The AC Adapter is an alternating-current-to-direct-current (ac-to-dc) converter that supplies power for the computer. The AC Adapter also charges the battery pack when the battery packs are installed in the computer. The input rating for the AC Adapter is 100–240 V ac, 50/60 Hz.

**DANGER**

Do not attempt to open the AC Adapter case. The AC Adapter is permanently sealed and cannot be repaired.

Warning:

Always use an AC Adapter certified by IBM in the country where you will be using the computer. Operating the computer with an incorrect AC Adapter can cause damage to the battery pack and to the computer.

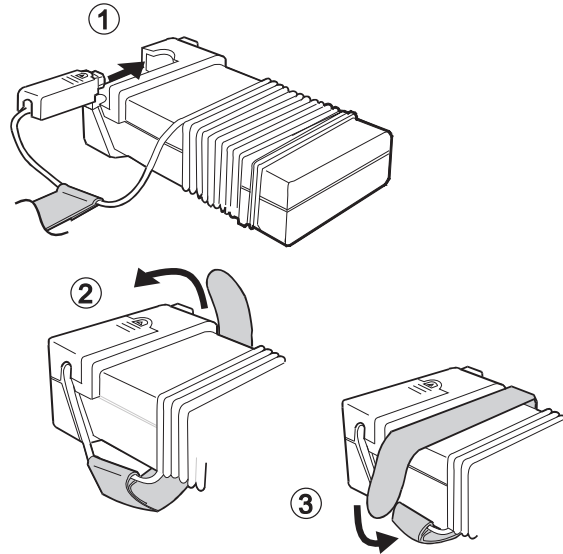
If you turn on the computer with the battery pack installed, you will hear a short beep when you connect or disconnect the AC Adapter from the computer. This short beep means that the power source has been changed.

When the AC Adapter cable is disconnected from the computer with a battery pack installed, the LCD brightness decreases slightly to conserve battery power.

Providing Power

To Wrap and Fasten the AC Adapter Cable

When you carry the AC Adapter with your computer, you can wrap and fasten the cable as follows:



Battery Pack

The battery pack is an internal power source for the computer. The battery pack can be recharged with the AC Adapter or the battery charger (available as an option).

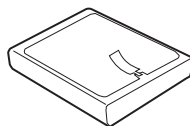
To charge the battery pack:

 Page 108.

Battery packs are shipped from the factory in an almost discharged state, so you *must charge* them before use. To operate your computer with the battery pack, see Chapter 4.

You can use the following battery pack for your computer.

Lithium Ion Battery Pack



The following table shows the operating time of the computer with a fully charged lithium ion battery pack:

Note:

Battery operating time depends on the options used with the computer, the frequency of key input, applications, and the configuration of the system, so your battery operating time might be shorter or longer than the listed times.

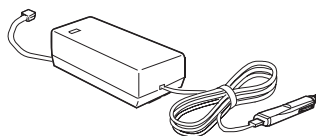
Model	Battery Operating Time
760CD Model 1	3.3—9.0 hours

For Your Information

Standby Battery: Your computer has another rechargeable battery, called the *standby battery*. It supplies the necessary power to save data when a battery pack is replaced during suspend mode. The standby battery can be replaced only by your IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative. To charge the standby battery, connect the AC Adapter to the computer. When using the computer for the first time, let the battery charge for at least 8 hours to allow it to become fully charged.

Car Battery Adapter

The Car Battery Adapter, available as an option, plugs into the cigarette lighter socket of a car and supplies power to your computer.



See the manual supplied with the Car Battery Adapter for details.

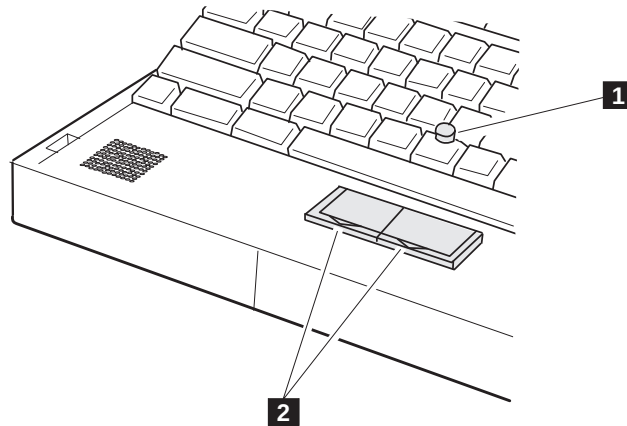
Using the TrackPoint III

Note:

No other software is required for the TrackPoint III; it works with the PS/2 mouse driver.

The keyboard contains a unique cursor-pointing device called the *TrackPoint III*. Pointing, selecting, and dragging all become part of a single process you can perform without moving your fingers from their typing position.

The TrackPoint III consists of a stick **1** on the keyboard and a pair of click buttons **2** below the keyboard. The motion of the cursor on the screen is controlled by the amount of pressure applied to the nonslip cap on the stick in any direction parallel to the keyboard; the stick does *not* move. The speed at which the cursor moves corresponds to the amount of pressure on the stick. The function of the click buttons depends on the software that is used.



If you are not familiar with using the TrackPoint III, these instructions will help you get started:

Note:

Remember that the stick does not move, and your finger should not move on it.

Note:

The mouse cursor may drift in some computer conditions. This is not a defect. Do not use the TrackPoint III until the pointer stops moving.

Note:

When you are not using the TrackPoint III, for example, when the power is off, do not leave the click button locked.

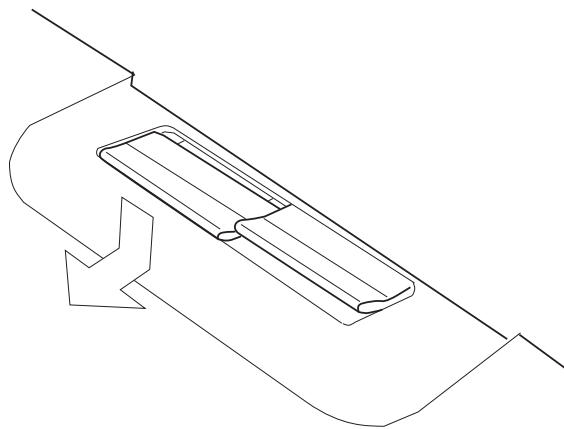
- 1** Place your hands in the typing position and press gently on the stick with either index finger in the direction in which you want the cursor to move.

Pressing the stick away from you moves the cursor up the screen; pressing it toward you moves the cursor down the screen. You can also move the cursor side to side by pressing sideways.

- 2** Press the click buttons with either thumb to select and drag as required by your software, as with any other pointing device.

Hints and Tips

You can easily drag an item across the screen without constantly pressing the click buttons of the TrackPoint III. To drag and drop an object, press the click button and slide it toward the front of the computer. The click button locks in place; you can now drag the object across the screen with the TrackPoint III stick without holding down the click button.



To release the latch, push the click button backwards.

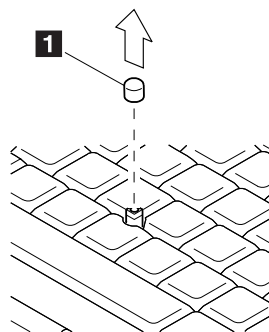


Using the TrackPoint III



Changing the Cap

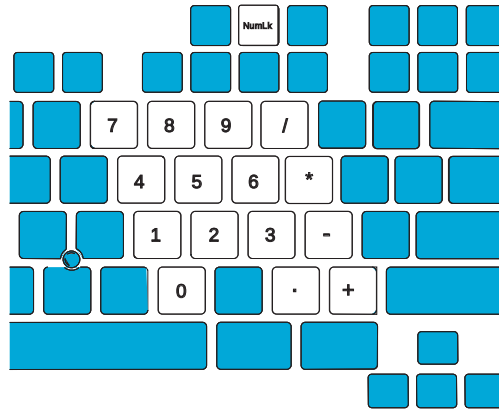
The cap 1 on the end of the TrackPoint III is removable. You can replace it with one of the spares shipped with your computer.



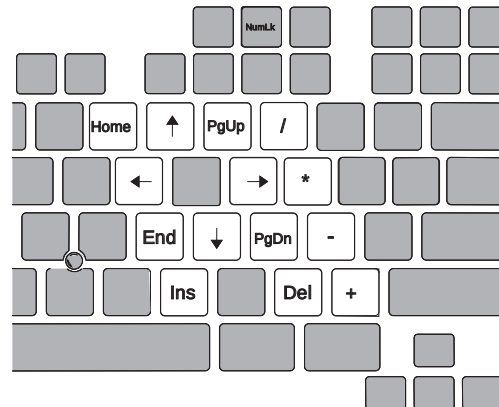
Operating the Numeric Keypad

The keyboard has some keys that, when enabled, work as if they were a 10-key numeric keypad. (The numeric keypad on the keyboard is not active when the external keyboard or the external numeric keypad is attached to the computer.)

To enable the numeric keypad, press and hold **Shift** and then press **NumLk**.



When the keypad is enabled, press and hold **Shift** to temporarily use the cursor- and screen-control keys.



To disable the numeric keypad, press and hold **Shift**; then press **NumLk** again.

Using the Display

Using the Display

To attach the external display:



Page 194.

To change the display mode:



Page 195.

The color LCD of your computer supports SVGA mode (800-by-600 video resolution) with up to 65 536 colors.

When you attach an external display that supports higher resolution than VGA mode, you can get a maximum of 1024-by-768 video resolution.

To display computer output on an external display, you need to set the appropriate *display mode*. You can select one of the following display modes:

LCD only: The computer output is displayed only on the LCD.

CRT only: The computer output is displayed only on the attached external display.

If no external display is attached to the computer and the display mode is set to *CRT only*, the output is displayed on the LCD.

Both: The computer output is displayed on both the LCD and the external display.

Using a DOS Application with Your Computer

When you use a DOS application that supports only VGA mode (640-by-480 resolution) with your computer, the screen image might look slightly distorted or might appear smaller than the display size, as shown in the following table. This is to maintain compatibility with DOS applications.

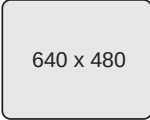
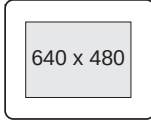
PS2 command for screen expansion:
 Page 317.

Note:
When display mode is set to 640-by-480 resolution and 65 536 colors, screen expansion is not available.

Warning:
* **When you select Both, do not attach an external display that supports only VGA mode (640-by-480 resolution). Otherwise, the external display screen will be scrambled and the output will not be displayed, or the screen might be damaged.**

The *screen expansion* function in the ThinkPad Features program lets you set the screen image to the same size as the actual screen size, but it may look slightly distorted, except when display mode is set to “CRT only”.

If screen expansion is set to off, the screen image appears as follows:

Display Mode			
LCD only	CRT only	Both *	
		On the LCD	On the external display
 The screen image appears in the center of the LCD and is smaller than the actual LCD size.	 The screen image is the same size as the actual screen size.	 The screen image appears in the center of the LCD and is smaller than the actual LCD size.	 The screen image appears in the center of the LCD and is smaller than the actual LCD size.

Using the Online Book

Viewing the Online Book

Note:

The online book is not available in all countries.

You can view this *User's Guide* online to retrieve information about the computer. The *online book* provides a very easy way of getting needed information when you are traveling.



Starting in OS/2 or Windows

Click on the **Online Book** icon.



Starting in DOS

1 Type **CD\READIBM** at the command prompt and press **Enter**.

2 Type **READIBM** and press **Enter**.

The menu for the online book appears. Choose any subject from the menu.

Hints and Tips

You can leave a "bookmark" or write notes as you read through the online book:

To close the book with a bookmark, select **Place closing bookmark** when you exit the online book.

To write notes:

1. Position the cursor at the place where you want to write a note.
2. Select **Notes** from the action bar; then select **Create...** from the pull-down menu.
3. Write any note; then save it.

A symbol (>) is placed next to where you left the note. To read the note, select **Display/Edit...** from the **Note** pull-down menu.

Keeping the Computer from Being Damaged

Your computer is a delicate device that requires careful handling. To keep it from being damaged, keep these precautions in mind:

- Do not apply any shocks to your computer.
- Do not place anything heavy on your computer.
- Do not pour liquid into your computer.
- Do not leave any objects (especially metal objects) in the computer.
- Keep the computer at least 13 cm (5 in.) away from any electrical appliance that generates a strong magnetic field such as a motor, magnet, TV, refrigerator, or large audio speakers.
- Use your computer when temperatures are between 5°C to 35°C (41°F to 95°F).
- Do not disassemble the computer.
- Do not scratch, twist, hit, or push the surface of the LCD.
- Remove the battery pack and keep it in a cool place if you will not be using the computer for a long period of time.

The removable hard disk drive and diskette drive are also very delicate devices that need careful handling. To avoid damage, do not press on them, drop them, or apply any shock to them when they are removed from the computer.

- Do not press on the middle part of the diskette drive.
- Insert a diskette straight into the diskette drive. Inserting it at an angle can damage the front of the diskette drive.
- Do not place more than one diskette label on a diskette. Two or more labels can cause a label to tear apart inside the drive and cause damage to the diskette drive.

Occasionally clean your computer as follows:

- Use a soft cloth moistened with nonalkaline detergent to wipe the exterior of the computer.
- Gently wipe the LCD with a dry, soft cloth. Do not use alcohol or detergent.

Carrying the Computer

Carrying the Computer

When carrying your computer, follow these instructions to prevent possible damage to your computer and data:

Note:

To reduce the weight of the computer when traveling, remove the CD-ROM drive if you will not be using it.

To remove the diskette drive:



Page 184.

- 1** Remove any CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.
- 2** Turn off all attached devices.
- 3** Turn off the computer and close the LCD.
- 4** Unplug all external cables and cords connected to the computer.
- 5** Make sure all computer doors and covers are closed.

For Your Information

1. You should occasionally back up data from the hard disk to diskettes or tapes.
2. To use the AC Adapter outside your home country, you need an ac power cord that is certified for the country you are visiting. You can purchase one through IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative in that country. For information about power cords, see "IBM Power Cords" on page 328.
3. A carrying case is available from your IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative.

Chapter 3. Operating Your Computer

This chapter provides information about the use of your computer.

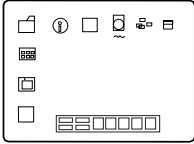
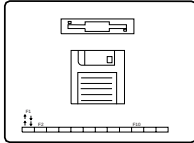
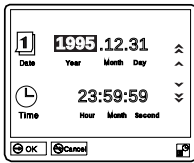
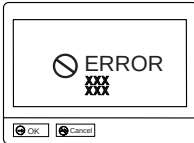
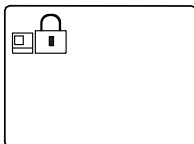
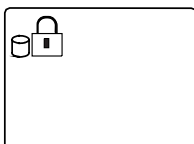
What Happens When Power Is Turned On?	37
Using the ThinkPad Features Program	38
Starting the ThinkPad Features Program	39
Starting the Program for OS/2 and Microsoft Windows	39
Starting the Program in DOS	42
Using Easy-Setup	44
Starting Easy-Setup	44
Using the Selectable Drive-Startup Sequence	49
Changing the Startup Sequence	49
Selecting the Network RPL Speed	50
Using the Fn Key	51
Using PC Cards	53
PC Card Limitations under Suspend Mode	53
Using the PC Card Director Program	54
Starting PC Card Director for OS/2 or Windows	55
Details about the Displayed Information	56
Setting the Power for a PC Card	59
Starting the PC Card Director Launcher	60
Displaying a List of Registered PC Cards	62
Setting the Memory Area for Windows	63
Changing the PC Card Director View	64
ATA Card Mount Utility	65
The Auto Configurator Utility	66
Starting PC Card Director for DOS	67
ATA Card Mount Utility	67
Using the Infrared Communication Feature	68
Considerations for Communication	70
Using the Mwave DSP Features	71
Using the Audio Function	74
Using the Function for OS/2	74
Using the Function for DOS	74
Using the Function for Windows or WIN-OS/2	76
Using the Telephony Function	78
Connecting the Telephone Cable	78
Mwave Data Modem	80
Using Country Selection	81
Mwave Fax Modem	81

Carrying the Computer

Mwave Telephone Answering Machine	82
Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features	83
Considerations When Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features	84
Using Smooth Playback	84
Using MPEG Playback	86
Using the Video-Out Feature	88
Using the Video-In Feature, Video Capture, and Video Overlay	90
Considerations When Using the Video-In Feature and Video Capture	91
Capturing Video Files or Still Images	92
Capturing, Compressing, and Building a Video File	92
Capturing a Still Image	96
Using the DVP Help System	97
Using the Overlay with Media Player in Windows	98
Using the Diskette Drive	99
Using the CD-ROM Drive	102
Playing Media	104
Handling Compact Discs	105
Using the MIDI/Joystick Port	106

What Happens When Power Is Turned On?

You see one of the following prompts when the computer is turned on:

 An operating system screen	An operating system screen appears when the computer is operating correctly. The screen you see may differ depending on your operating system.
	This screen appears when an operating system is not found. It instructs you to insert a self-starting diskette into the diskette drive and press F1 to start the diskette. The order in which the computer checks the drives for an operating system is set in the drive-startup sequence. See “Using the Selectable Drive-Startup Sequence” on page 49 for more information.
	This screen instructs you to set the date and time for the first time. Enter the date and time (see page 46); then press Enter .
	This screen indicates that a failure occurred during the power-on self-test (POST). See page 262 for the necessary actions.
	This icon appears when a power-on password is set. To start the computer, enter the correct password.
	This icon appears when a hard disk password is set. To unlock the hard disk drive, enter the correct password.

Using the ThinkPad Features Program

Using the ThinkPad Features Program

Note:

When installing an operating system, you must also install the ThinkPad Features program.

To install the ThinkPad Features program:

 Chapter 7.

Fuel-Gauge program:

 Page 116.

Personalization Editor program:

 Page 151.

ThinkPad Features is a program that allows you to select various features for your computer such as:

Power management

- Power mode
- Suspend and hibernation options
- Resume options
- Power for devices

Alarm

- Speaker indicator setting
- Low-battery alarm

Display

- Resolution and color depth settings
- External monitor settings

Fuel-Gauge program

- Remaining power percentage
- Current power mode
- Discharge options

Docking Control

For information on how to dock or undock the computer using this feature, refer to the documents supplied with the Dock II option.

Built-in device setup

- Port settings (serial, parallel, or infrared)

Personalization Utilities

- Personalization Editor
- Update Utility

Starting the ThinkPad Features Program

The way you start the ThinkPad Features program depends on the operating system.

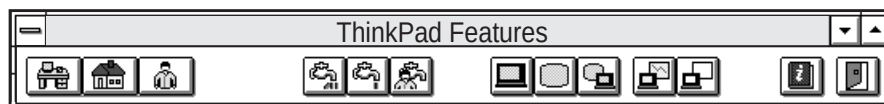


Starting the Program for OS/2 and Microsoft Windows

If you are using OS/2 or Windows, you can use the ThinkPad Features program with a user-friendly graphical user interface. You can select or change any option in the ThinkPad Features program by simply clicking on the buttons on the screen with a pointing device. You can also specify features by entering the appropriate PS2 commands at the command prompt (see page Appendix D, "Using PS2 Commands" on page 313).

ThinkPad Features program has two views, the Tool Bar view and the ThinkPad view.

Tool Bar View



In the Tool Bar view, you can:

- Change the system configuration by one touch of the one-touch button.
- Change the power mode for battery operation.
- Change the display device to display information on the LCD, external display, or both.
- Enable presentation mode, which will disable the timers, so the LCD will not turn off or the computer will not enter the power-saving modes during a presentation.

When you press the maximize button in the top-right corner (), the ThinkPad view is displayed.

For explanations of the buttons, see the figure on page 40.

ThinkPad View

In the ThinkPad view, you can:

- Customize the settings for the one-touch setup buttons.

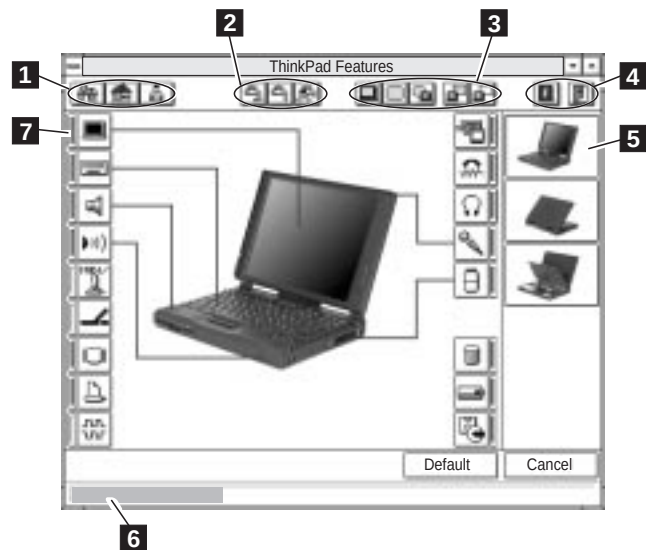
Using the ThinkPad Features Program

- View or set the configuration for the built-in devices. This allows you to detect or resolve system resource conflicts.

For your information

A *Help* button is available on the screen. For additional information on each menu item, click on the help button.

When you press the maximize button while in the tool bar view, you see the following screen (any buttons on the screen that appear in gray are options that cannot be set):



1 One-touch setup buttons

Click on one of the buttons to set the system configuration automatically to fit your office (), or your home (), or to customize it ().

2 Power mode buttons for battery operation

Click on one of the buttons to set the power mode for battery operation to high performance mode (), automatic mode (), or customized mode ().

Using the ThinkPad Features Program

3 Display device buttons

Click on one of the buttons to set the display mode to the LCD

() , external display () , or both () .

When making a presentation, you can click on the presentation

button () to disable any system timers, such as turning the LCD off or entering a power-saving mode.

4 Click on the left button for help. Click on the right button to save the changes made and to exit the ThinkPad Feature window.

5 View angle buttons

Click on the buttons representing the front, rear, or interior view to display the choices and options from that computer view.

6 Status bar

When you place the cursor on a device button, the status of the device name and its status appear on this status bar.

7 Device buttons

Click on the button of your choice from the screen; then set the options for that device in the window that appears.

When the device is enabled, the red indicator next to the icon is lit. Otherwise, it is disabled.

Click on the **Cancel** button to exit the ThinkPad Features program without saving the changes. Click on the **Default** button to set the default values for each option and cancel the changes you have made.

Using the ThinkPad Features Program



Starting the Program in DOS

The ThinkPad Features program for DOS is a command line interface, so you can specify features by entering appropriate commands. Type **PS2 ?** at the DOS prompt to display the ThinkPad Features online help.

Notes:

1. You can use the PS2 commands from the DOS prompt in OS/2 or Windows.
2. This menu screen might look different on your system.

```
C:\> PS2 ?
```

```
(C) Copyright IBM Corp. 1993,1995. All rights reserved.  
US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication  
or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract  
with IBM Corp.
```

```
Command Syntax: PS2  [Parameter1] [Parameter2] [Parameter3]
```

```
Following are available [Parameter1].  
For the complete command syntax, type 'PS2 ? [Parameter]'.
```

```
1.Power Management related
```

You can select an item from the menu and follow the instructions on the screen to set any of the features. For details on the commands, see Appendix D, "Using PS2 Commands" on page 313.

You can create a batch file to set your unique operating environment quickly and easily.

Using the ThinkPad Features Program

Note:

Refer to the manuals supplied with the operating system for more information on batch files.

The following example batch file allows you to set up an operational environment that is suitable for traveling and can result in longer battery operation time.

```
@Echo Off
```

```
Rem SAMPLE: Set the parameters to provide maximum power utilization.
```

```
Rem =====
```

```
PS2 PMode Auto           > Nul
PS2 LCd 3                 > Nul
PS2 DISK 3                > Nul
PS2 P0wer 5               > Nul
PS2 SPeed Fixed MIN       > Nul
PS2 STandby 3             > Nul
PS2 IR Off                > Nul
PS2 CARD Off              > Nul
PS2 SErial Off            > Nul
```

Using Easy-Setup

Using Easy-Setup

The computer has a built-in system setup function called *Easy-Setup*. Easy-Setup allows you to set the date and time, passwords, the startup sequence of the drives, and hardware configurations. Easy-Setup also runs the diagnostics.

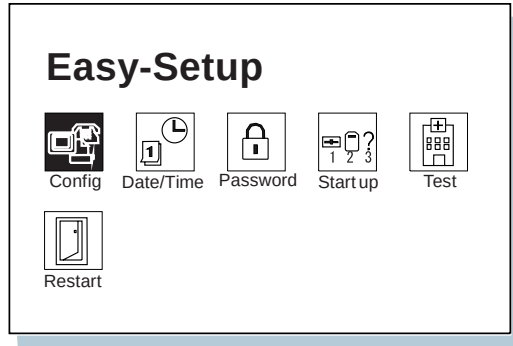
Starting Easy-Setup

To start Easy-Setup:

- 1** Turn off the computer.
- 2** Remove any diskette from the diskette drive.
- 3** Press and hold **F1**; then turn on the computer. Hold **F1** until the *Easy-Setup* menu appears.

Note:

You can change the screen color of the *Easy-Setup* menu with the key combinations of **Ctrl+PgUp** or **Ctrl+PgDn**. Use **Ctrl+Home** to restore the original screen color.



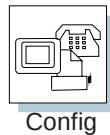
To select an item from the *Easy-Setup* menu, move the pointer with a pointing device to the item and click on the item or use the keyboard as follows:

Arrow keys (↑ ↓ ← →): Highlight the item from the menu.

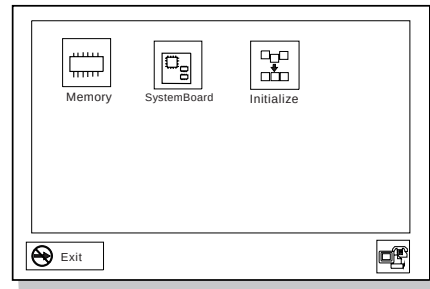
Spacebar: Selects the item.

Enter key: Enters the next menu, or saves the changes and exits the menu.

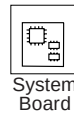
Esc key: Returns to the previous menu, or cancels the changes.



Config contains the following:



Memory shows the amount of installed memory and available memory.



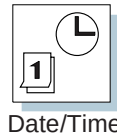
SystemBoard provides information about the installed system board.



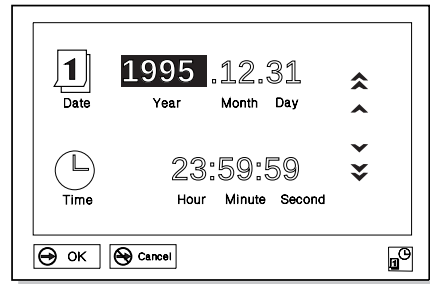
Initialize sets all items that have been changed back to their default values.

After verifying your selections, click on **OK** or press **Enter**. To cancel the selections, press **Esc**.

Using Easy-Setup

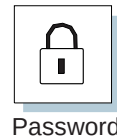


Date/Time is used to set the current date and time.



Select any field (Year, Month, Date, Hour, Minute, or Second) with the **Arrow** keys or pointing device; then type or click on the ▲ or ▼ icon to change the setting. Clicking on the ▲ or ▼ icon changes the setting more quickly.

After verifying the selection, click on **OK** or press **Enter**. To cancel the setting, click on **Cancel** or press **Esc**.

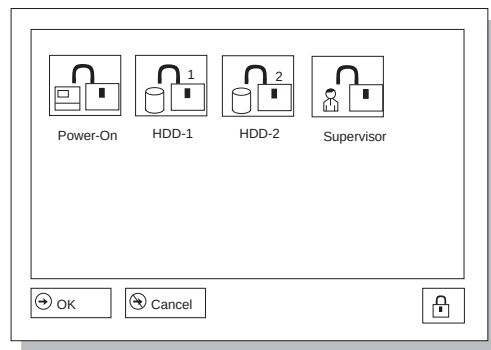


Password is used to set:

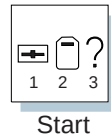
Power-on password
Hard disk password

- *HDD-1* for the hard disk in the hard disk drive bay
- *HDD-2* for the secondary hard disk in the UltraBay

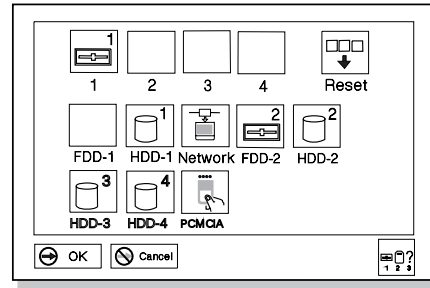
Supervisor password



For more information about passwords, see Chapter 5.



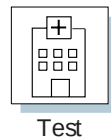
Start up is used to change the startup sequence of your computer.



Note:

For more information about the startup sequence, see “Using the Selectable Drive-Startup Sequence” on page 49.

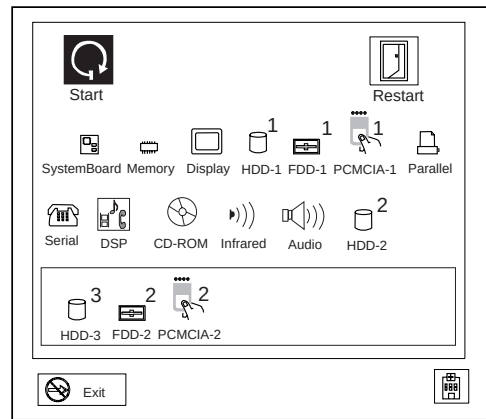
The **HDD-1** icon represents the internal hard disk drive installed in the computer. The other numbered HDD icons are external hard disk drives. **FDD-1** represents the first diskette drive found during system startup. When no diskette drive is installed and if an attached expansion unit (Dock I or Dock II) has a diskette drive, the diskette drive in Dock I or Dock II will be the first drive.



Select **Test** to test the computer hardware.

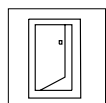
Note:

The **FDD-1** and **HDD-1** icons represent the diskette drive and hard disk drive of the computer, respectively. The **FDD-2** and **HDD-3** icons represent the externally attached diskette drive and hard disk drives. The **HDD-2** icon represents the hard disk drive in the UltraBay.



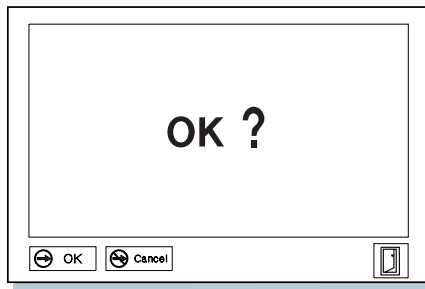
For more information, see “Testing the Computer” on page 255.

Using Easy-Setup



Restart

Click on **Restart** to restart the computer after you have made your selections. Then press **Enter** or click on **OK**.



Using the Selectable Drive-Startup Sequence

Warning:

If you change your startup sequence, you must be extremely careful when you do write operations (such as copying, saving, or formatting). Your data or programs can be overwritten if you select the wrong drive.

Selectable drive startup (*selectable boot*) allows you to control the startup sequence of the drives in your computer. The order in which the computer searches the drives for your operating system is the *drive-startup sequence*. If you are working with multiple operating systems, you might want to change the drive-startup sequence to load an operating system from the hard disk or a PC Card without checking the diskette drive, or to do a remote program load (RPL).

Changing the Startup Sequence

To change the startup sequence:

To start Easy-Setup:

 Page 44.

Note:

You cannot set a hard disk drive before a *PCMCIA* in the startup sequence.

1 Start Easy-Setup and select the **Start up** icon.

2 Move the cursor to the **Reset** icon; then press the **Spacebar**.

The sequence is reset, and all available device icons appear at the bottom of the screen. For the meaning of the icons, see page 47.

3 Move the cursor to the icon for the first device in the startup sequence; then press the **Spacebar**.

Repeat this step to set the other devices for the startup sequence. You can set up to four devices.

4 Click on **OK** or press **Enter** to save the change.



Using Easy-Setup



Selecting the Network RPL Speed

When you use a remote program load through a token-ring card or other network card, the RPL speed can be selected.

- 1** Start Easy-Setup and select the **Start up** icon.
- 2** Move the cursor to the **Network** icon; then press the **Spacebar**.

The window to select the token-ring RPL speed appears.

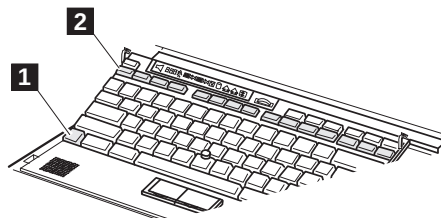
- 3** Move the cursor to the **4** icon or the **16** icon; then press the **Spacebar** and press **Enter**.

If you are using another card, such as an Ethernet card, press **Esc** to exit this window.



Using the Fn Key

The **Fn** key function allows you to change operational features instantly. When you use the following functions, press and hold the **Fn** key 1 ; then press the appropriate function key 2 (**F1** to **F12**; and **PgUp** or **PgDn**).



Note:

To use the Fn Key Lock **Fn** key function, select **Keyboard/Pointing Device** from the *Setup* menu in the ThinkPad Features program window, or type **PS2 FNS E** at the command prompt.

Hints and Tips

*Using the Fn Key Lock **Fn** Key Function:* You only need to press **Fn** once to get the same effect as when you press and hold the **Fn** key. After you press a function key in the top row, **Fn** returns to its normal state.

Key Combination	Feature	Meaning
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	Fuel-Gauge display on or off 	The Fuel-Gauge program must be activated before you can use this key combination. When this key combination is pressed: For OS/2 or Windows users: The window for the battery power status appears or disappears. Parameters for power status can be set. For DOS users: Power status information appears or disappears in the top-right corner of the screen.
 + 	Standby mode 	Places the computer in standby mode. For more information about this mode, see page 125.
 + 	Suspend mode 	Places the computer in suspend mode. For more information about this mode, see page 125.

Using the Fn Key

Key Combination	Feature	Meaning
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	LCD/external display switching 	Displays the computer output in the following order when an external display is attached. External Display Both LCD
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	Reserved	—
 + 	Power mode switching 	When this key combination is pressed during battery-power operation, the power-management (power-saving) mode changes as follows. High Auto Customize AC mode is used when the AC Adapter is attached. The Fuel-Gauge program displays the current power option. See page 116.
 + 	Hibernation mode 	Places the computer in hibernation mode. See "Hibernation Mode" on page 129 for more information.
 + 	Dock I speaker volume up 	Increases the speaker volume for Dock I attached to the computer.
 + 	Dock I speaker volume down 	Decreases the speaker volume for Dock I attached to the computer.

Using PC Cards

To insert a PC Card:

 Page 163.

PCMCIA standard:

 Page 289.

PC Card Director:

 Page 54.

Your computer has two slots that allow you to install 68-pin, 85.6mm × 54.0mm (credit-card-size) PC Cards. With a PC Card, you can send and receive faxes, communicate via a network, or store data.

The PCMCIA slots of the computer conform to the PCMCIA Standard Release 2.1 that is defined as the hardware layer of the PCMCIA standard. Your computer also comes with the following basic set of drivers:

- Socket Services Release 2.1
- Card Services Release 2.1
- PC Card Director

Card Services and Socket Services are the basic drivers required for all PC Cards. PC Card Director automatically identifies the type of PC Card that has been inserted in a slot and sets it up so that you can use the card immediately. It also provides you with an entry-level security feature to protect unauthorized access to a PCMCIA slot and installed PC Card.

The PCMCIA slots support *Type I*, *Type II*, and *Type III* PC Cards. Ask IBM or an IBM authorized dealer for more information about the different types of PC Cards.

For more information about PC Cards, see Appendix B.

PC Card Limitations under Suspend Mode

Some PC Cards can be inserted or removed without turning off the computer (refer to the instructions that came with the PC Card), but you *cannot* remove or install PC Cards during suspend mode.

Using PC Cards

Using the PC Card Director Program

Note:

When installing an operating system, install the PCMCIA device driver with the PCMCIA Features Diskette to use PC Card Director.

To install the PCMCIA device driver:



Chapter 7.

Note:

The PCMCIA.CRD file does not always list the latest PC Cards. If your PC Card is not listed, try using it with PC Card Director anyway.

Your computer comes with an advanced IBM program for PCMCIA called **PC Card Director** that makes using PC Cards with your computer easier by:

Turning on and setting up a PC Card when you insert it in a PCMCIA slot (Auto Configurator).

Showing what type of PC Card is in your computer.

Notifying you with a message, sound, and icons whenever a card is inserted or removed.

Allowing you to register an application program for a particular PC Card and starting the program automatically when the card is inserted.

Some PC Cards come with their own device driver that will set them up just like PC Card Director does. However, if these cards are supported by PC Card Director, you will not need their device drivers. The PC Cards that PC Card Director supports are listed in the **PCMCIA.CRD** file on the Utility Diskette.

If your PC Card is not supported by PC Card Director, you must install the driver that came with your card. The card driver must be compatible with the PCMCIA Card Services Standard Release 2.1. Follow the instructions in your PC Card manual to install the driver.

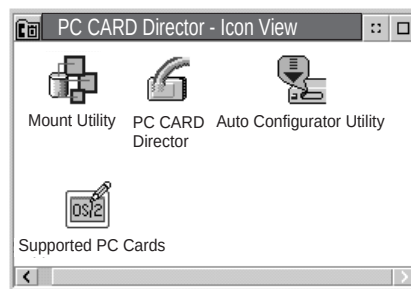


Starting PC Card Director for OS/2 or Windows

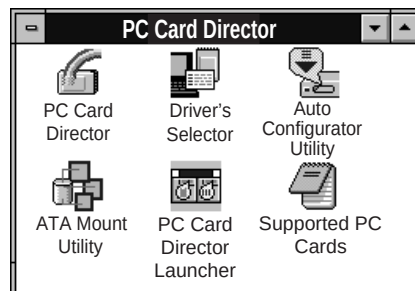
Starting PC Card Director for OS/2 and Windows is similar, but you will see different screens.

To start PC Card Director, double-click on the **PC Card Director** icon in the PC Card Director window according to your operating system:

For OS/2:



For Windows:

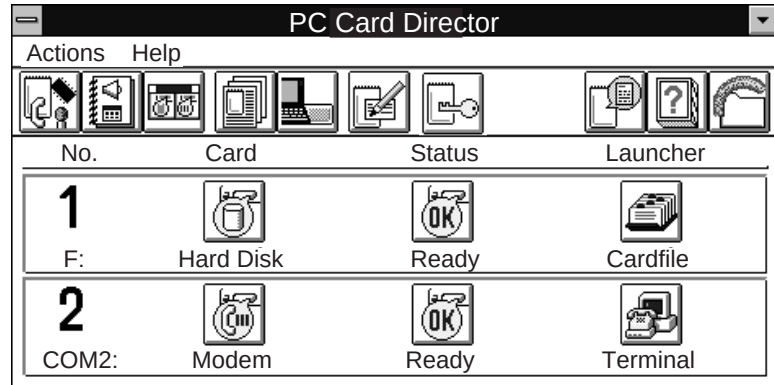


Using PC Cards

Note:

This screen might look different depending on your operating system.

The following screen appears:

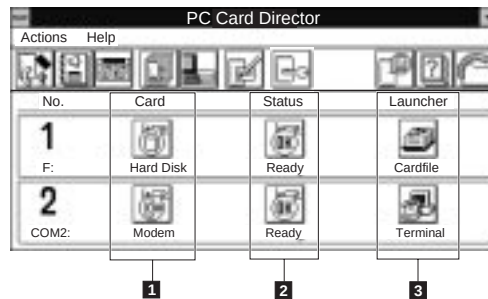


The name of a PC Card installed in a PC Card slot, the PC Card status, and related applications are displayed.



Details about the Displayed Information

The PC Card Director window contains the following features:



1 The Card button

You can register a name, select an icon or application to run, or set the sound for a PC Card installed in a PC Card slot.

2 The Status button

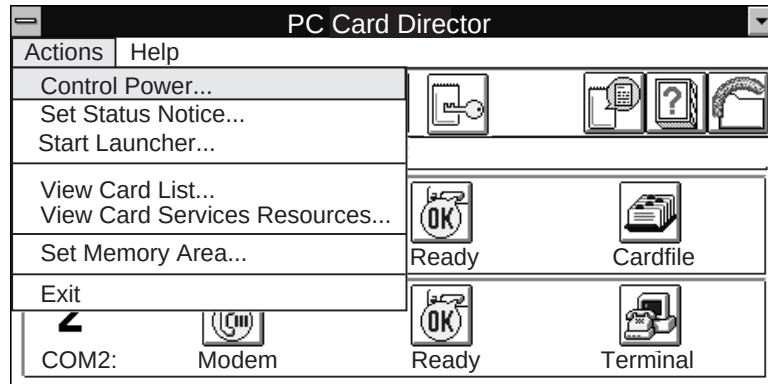
You can view the status of the installed PC Card or read product information about other PC Cards.

3 The Launcher button

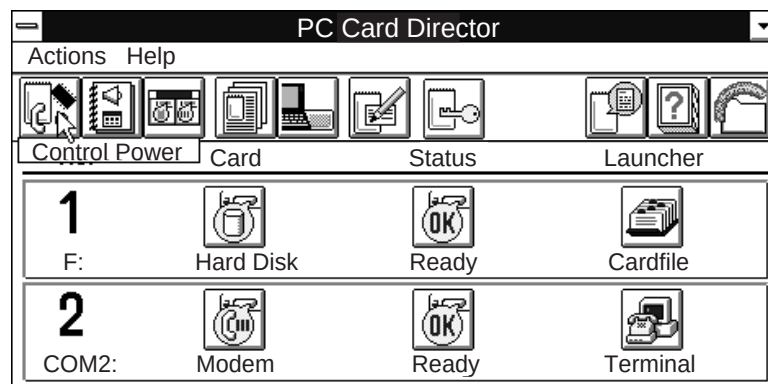
You can start the application on the PC Card by pressing this button.

Using PC Cards

You can select other features from the pull-down menu, as shown.



You can also select the same features by pressing the buttons on the tools bar. To view a description of each button on the tools bar, press the right mouse button.



Using PC Cards

These are the descriptions of each feature you can choose from the pull-down menu or tools-bar buttons.

To control power:

 Page 59.

Control Power

You can turn the power on for a PC Card installed in a PC Card slot, or you can turn it off, without removing the PC Card from the slot.

Set Status Notice

You can choose how you are to be notified when a PC Card is removed from or installed in a PC Card slot.

Note:

This option is only for OS/2.

Open PC Card Director Folder

Opens the PC Card Director folder.

Note:

This option is only for Windows.

Start Launcher

Runs the PC Card Director Launcher.

To start launcher:

 Page 60.

To view card list:

 Page 62.

View Card List

Displays a list of the PC Cards registered in PC Card Director.

View Card Services Resources

Displays the resource information controlled by Card Services (for example, the IRQ level or memory) or the release version notice for Card Services.

Note:

This option is only for Windows.

Set Memory Area...

Sets the memory area for Card Services, PC Card, or Upper Memory Block (UMB).

To set memory area:

 Page 63.

Supported PC Card Information

Displays the list of the PC Cards that are ready to be used by PC Card Director.

Note:

This option is only for OS/2.

To change view:

 Page 64.

Change View

Switches between displaying the PC Card information and displaying it in icons.

Security

Sets the security feature to on or off. You can also set the security options and password, which control access to the PCMCIA slot and installed PC Card.

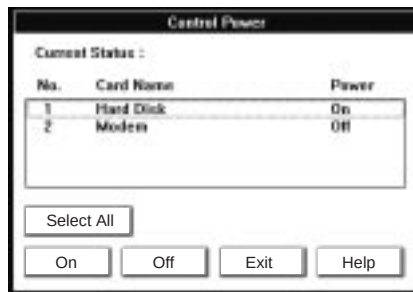
**Setting the Power for a PC Card**

You can turn the power on or off for a PC Card installed in a PC Card slot, without removing the PC Card from its slot. Controlling the power for the PC Card helps conserve battery power.

Select **Control Power...** from the Actions pull-down menu, or click on the left-most icon in the tools bar. The Control Power window appears:

Note:

"No. 1" is the upper PC Card slot, and "No. 2" is the lower PC Card slot.



To turn off the power to a PC Card:

1. Open the **Control Power** window.
2. Select the PC Card for which you want to turn power off.
3. Click on the **Off** button.

To turn on the power to a PC Card:

1. Open the **Control Power** window.
2. Select the PC Card for which you want to turn power on.
3. Click on the **On** button.

Note:

Finish and close the application program that the PC Card is using before turning off the power to that PC Card.

Using PC Cards



Starting the PC Card Director Launcher

A launcher is installed with PC Card Director for Windows. By launching (registering) an application often used by the PC Card, you can run the application with a click of a button.

Note:

OS/2 Warp Version 3 includes a LaunchPad. Refer to the manuals supplied with the operating system.

To register an application to run automatically:

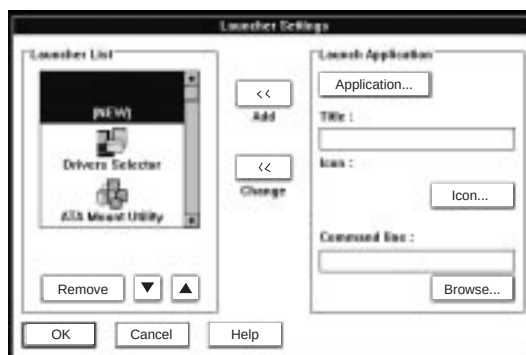
1 Start PC Card Director Launcher.

Select **Start Launcher...** from the Actions pull-down menu, click on the tools button, or click on the **PC Card Director Launcher** icon.

2 Select the **Launcher Settings** button (the right-most button) in the PC Card Director Launcher window.



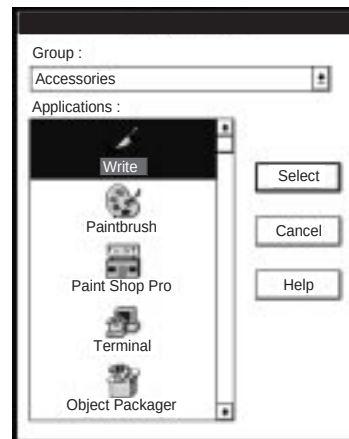
3 Select **New** from the Launcher List of the Launcher Settings window.



- 4** Click on the **Application...** button in the Launch Application box.

You can also fill in the information for Title, Icon, and Command Line.

- 5** Select an application in the Select Application window; then click on **Select**.



- 6** Click on the Add (>>) button.

The application is added to the Launcher list.

- 7** Click on the **OK** button.

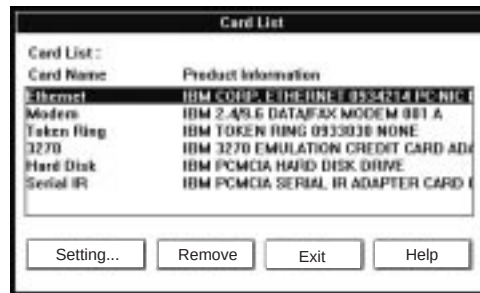
You have registered the application. Refer to the Help menu for more information.

Using PC Cards



Displaying a List of Registered PC Cards

To view a PC Card name and its product information once it is registered, select **View Card List...** from the Actions pull-down menu of the PC Card Director window, or click on the tools button.



Setting... Displays the following information about a PC Card:

- Name of the PC Card
- Product information
- Icon of the PC Card type
- Applications registered to run automatically
- WAV files registered to play automatically

Remove Deletes the selected PC Card from PC Card Director.



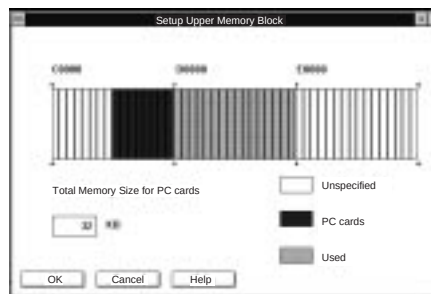
Setting the Memory Area for Windows

If you are using Windows, you can set the memory area used by the PC Card and Card Services.

The PC Card and Card Services use a memory area called the *UMB (upper memory block)*. The UMB is used by various devices or programs, and as a result, memory area conflicts often occur. With PC Card Director, you can avoid these conflicts by easily setting the UMB for the PC Card and Card Services.

To set the memory area used for the PC Card and Card Services, do the following:

- 1** Select **Set Memory Area...** from the Actions pull-down menu of the PC Card Director window or click on the tools button for it.



- 2** Plan carefully which memory area to use for the PC Card and Card Services from the displayed information.
- 3** Using the mouse, click on the desired memory area for the PC Card and Card Services.
- 4** Click on the **OK** button.
- 5** Restart the system.

Using PC Cards



Changing the PC Card Director View

You can display the information in PC Card Director in detail or using icons. The following is an example of what you see when PC Card Director is displayed in icons:



If you are using OS/2:

To display information in icons, click on the **Change View** button from the tools bar, or select **Change View** from the Actions pull-down menu.

To display information in detail, click on the minimized PC Card Director icon with the right-mouse button; then select **Change View**.

To set the options for the displayed information when PC Card Director is displayed in an icon, click on the minimized PC Card Director icon with the right-mouse button; then select **Display Change in Status**.

If you are using Windows:

To display information using icons, click on the minimize button () in the upper-right corner of the window.

To display information in detail, click on the maximize button ().



ATA Card Mount Utility

PCMCIA AT Attachment (ATA) cards can have a number of partitions. The ATA Card Mount Utility assigns or removes a drive letter to these partitions.

Note:

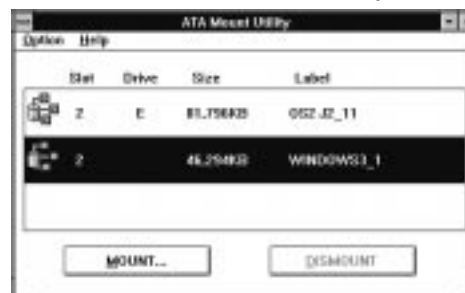
For the ATA Card Mount Utility for DOS, see page 67.

The main panel displays the information about the logical drives (partitions) that are ready to be mounted or dismounted. This is an example of a Windows ATA Card Mount Utility screen:

For more information:



Page 289.



Select the logical drive with the arrow keys (↑ or ↓) or with the mouse; then mount or dismount it by clicking on the **MOUNT** or **DISMOUNT** button, or by selecting the choices from the pull-down menu.

- MOUNT** Assigns a drive letter to the selected logical drive. Select a drive letter in the dialog box. Then the drive letter is mounted to the logical drive.
- DISMOUNT** Releases the drive letter from the selected logical drive.

The Option pull-down menu contains the following:

- Refresh** Refreshes the list. Use this choice when you have inserted or removed a PCMCIA ATA card in the PC Card slot.
- Exit/Quit** Ends the program.

Using PC Cards



Note:

Refer to the PCMCIA.CRD file for a list of PC Cards that Auto Configurator can enable.

The Auto Configurator Utility

The Auto Configurator has prepared a script file for configuring each PC Card. These script files contain steps for enabling the PC Card and the resource information for its I/O interrupt level or memory. The Auto Configurator Utility is a utility that edits these script files, transforms them into binary data, and records them in Auto Configurator. Then Auto Configurator enables each PC Card, based on the data in the card's script file.

For more information on how to use the Auto Configurator, see Appendix B.



Starting PC Card Director for DOS

To start PC Card Director for DOS:

1 Go to the DOS command prompt.

C:\>

2 Type C:\>C:\THINKPAD\EZPLAY at the command prompt; then press **Enter**.

Note:

C:\THINKPAD is the directory where PC Card Director is installed. If you have installed it in a different directory, type that directory name instead.

The following screen appears:

Note:

Some PC Cards might not display any information in PC Card Director.

```

                                PC Card Director
                                (C) Copyright IBM Corp. 1993,1995, Version 3.

Card Services DOS Card Services Driver, Version 2.1  PCMCIA Card Services

                                Release  2.1          Revision  2.1

Slot Information

No.      Status   Card Type   Card Information
-> 1      Ready    Memory     F: IBM 1MB SRAM 933152 933151

Enter     F1=Help   F3=End     F9=Resources  F1 =Client

```

ATA Card Mount Utility

For more information:



Page 289.

PCMCIA ATA cards can have a number of partitions. The ATA Card Mount utility assigns (mounts) or removes (dismounts) a drive letter to these partitions.

C:\THINKPAD is the directory where PC Card Director is installed. If you have installed it in a different directory, type that directory name instead.

Communicating with the Infrared Port

Using the Infrared Communication Feature

Note:

When installing an operating system, you must install the infrared device driver to use ThinkPad mode.

To install the infrared device driver:



For OS/2: page 218, and for Windows: page 243.

Note:

Mbps: Mega bits per second

Your computer is equipped with an infrared (IR) communication feature that allows point-to-point communication with other ThinkPad computers or systems equipped with an infrared port. The computer has two infrared ports, one in the front of the computer below the hard disk drive compartment and another on the rear of the computer.

The infrared feature supports three modes with the following communication speed in bits per second (bps):

ThinkPad mode (IrDA High Speed extension) (1.15 Mbps)

This mode is used when communicating with another 755 or 760 series IBM ThinkPad computer with an infrared port or other systems supporting ThinkPad mode.

Generic (IrDA 1.0) (up to 115 000 bps)

This mode is used when communicating with other IBM ThinkPad computers, Hewlett-Packard** 100LX**, 200LX**, Omnibook**, or other systems with infrared ports supporting Generic mode.

Sharp (ASK) (9600 bps)

This mode is used when communicating with the Sharp** Wizard** or other systems with infrared ports supporting Sharp mode.

The ThinkPad Features program contains a utility program that enables the front or rear infrared port and sets the communication speed.

If you are using OS/2 or Windows, see page 38.

PS2 command:

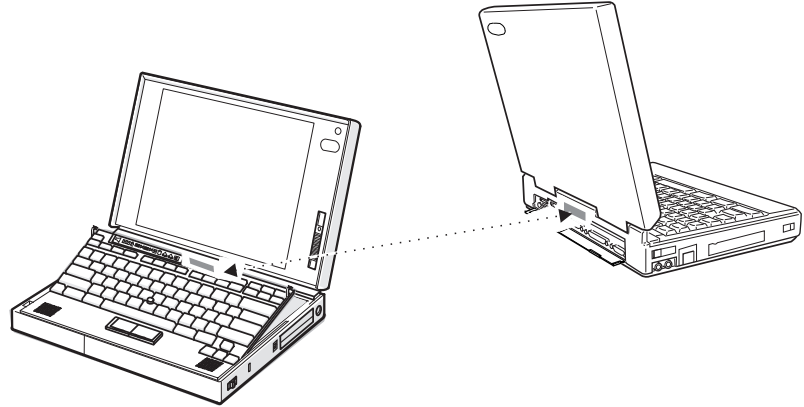


Page 42.

*If you are using DOS, type PS2 ? IR at the command prompt; then press **Enter** for more information.*

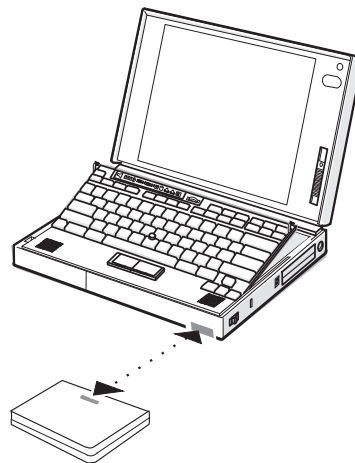
Communicating with the Infrared Port

During communication with rear infrared ports, the infrared ports must face each other directly at a communicating distance.



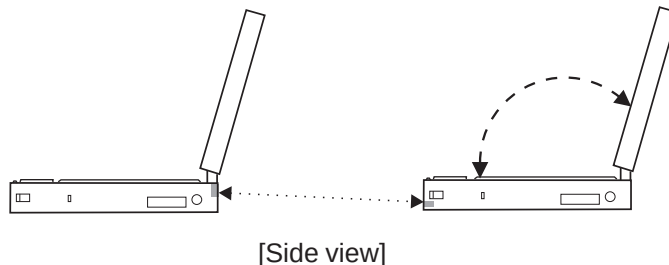
It is recommended that you use the rear infrared port for communicating between ThinkPad computers.

When communicating between a front infrared port and an infrared port on another computer, the infrared ports on the computers must face each other directly at a communicating distance.



Communicating with the Infrared Port

Communication can be affected by the light from the LCD on the computer. To avoid this, open the LCD to a wide angle:



Considerations for Communication

Consider the following points when communicating with the infrared ports:

You need to run the same communication application on both computers to communicate between your computer and another computer device. Refer to the application manuals for more information.

Run only one communication application at a time that uses the infrared ports.

When using applications that use a conventional serial port and serial cable to exchange data, your computer infrared ports are used as a replacement for the serial port and cable. In this case, ThinkPad mode cannot be used.

The communicating distance might need to be less if:

- The other system is not the same model as your computer.
- There is interference from ambient light. It is recommended that you do not use infrared communication in bright sunshine or artificial light conditions.
- The infrared port is not directly facing the other communicating port.

Headphones may interfere with infrared communications. You might hear noise through the headphones, or the computer might not be able to communicate with other devices through the infrared port.

Using the Mwave DSP Features

Note:

In some countries, the Mwave telephony functions are only available with the DAA/Telephony Kit option installed.

Note:

For more information on MIDI, see "Mwave MIDI Overview" on page 308.

The computer provides the *Media Processor (Mwave DSP)* feature, which is based on the *digital signal processor (DSP)*. It gives you high performance for audio and telephony functions, and it supports a more natural way of communicating with your computer.

The Mwave DSP system supports a full complement of audio and telephony functions, including the following:

Audio

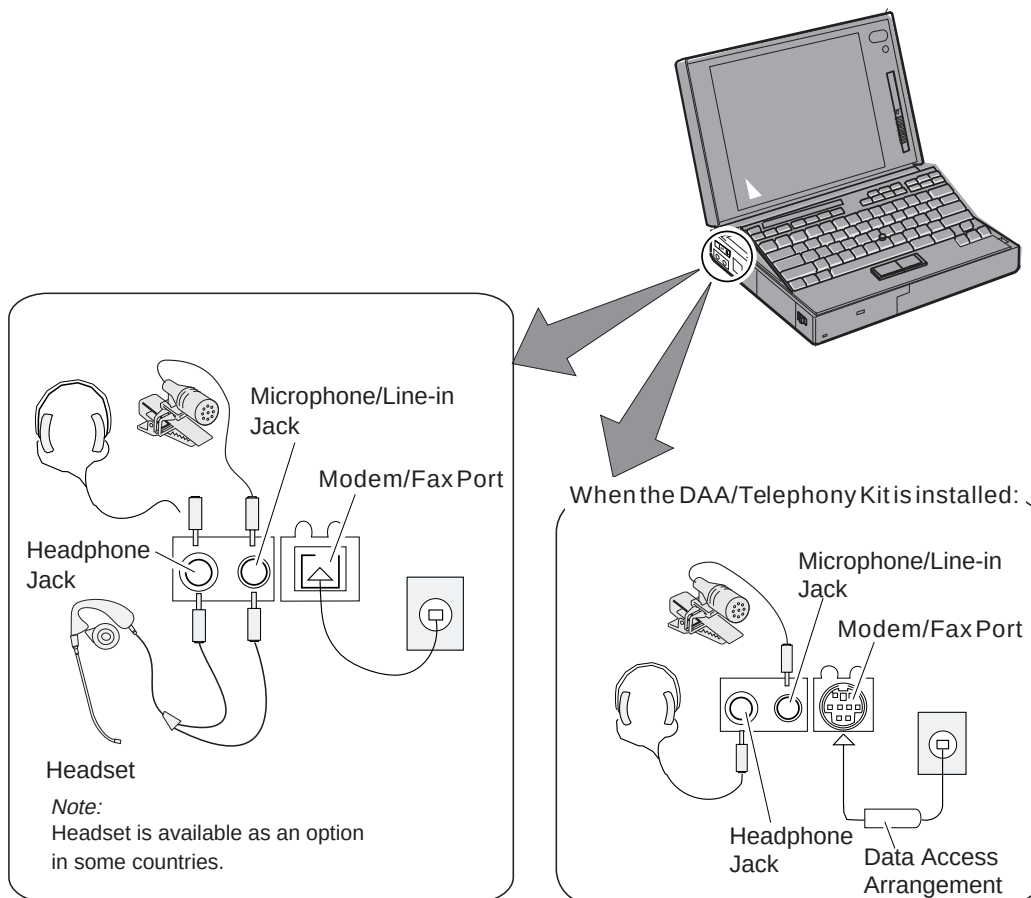
- Supports wave audio recording and playback of up to 16 bits, stereo, and 44 kHz sampling
- Provides a high-quality MIDI wave table synthesizer with 128 instruments and up to 32 voices
- Supports DOS games using the Sound Blaster** interface

Telephony

- Supports data modems at up to 14 400 bps
- Supports fax modems at up to 14 400 bps
- Supports the speaker phone function
- Supports the telephone answering machine function

Using Mwave DSP Audio Features

This illustration shows the connections between the computer and external cables or devices:



Using Mwave DSP Audio Features

Note:

When installing an operating system, you must install the Mwave DSP support software to use the Mwave DSP features.

To install the Mwave DSP support software:

 Chapter 7.

The Mwave DSP feature supports the following functions for each operating system:

For OS/2:

- Wave audio recording and playback
- MIDI synthesizer
- Sound Blaster support in the DOS session
- Data modem
- Class II Fax
- MPEG Audio

For DOS:

- Sound Blaster support
- Data modem

For Windows:

- Wave audio recording and playback
- MIDI synthesizer
- Sound Blaster support in the DOS session
- Data modem
- Fax modem
- Speaker phone
- Telephone answering machine
- MPEG Audio

Using Mwave DSP Audio Features

Using the Audio Function

Use the Mwave audio functions according to your operating system.



Using the Function for OS/2

The Mwave feature supports audio in the OS/2 environment through Multimedia Presentation Manager/2 (MMPM/2). To use the Mwave audio functions with OS/2, refer to the MMPM/2 manuals.

Note:

Do not enter suspend mode when using the audio functions.

For Your Information

When you play audio files in the MMPM/2 environment, refer to the following:

When you play the wave audio files, select the **DIGITAL AUDIO** icon in the Multimedia folder.

When you play the MIDI sequencer files, select the **MIDI** icon in the Multimedia folder.



Using the Function for DOS

The Mwave feature supports audio for DOS games through *Sound Blaster* support.

To enable Sound Blaster support for DOS games:

- 1** Type FASTCFG at the command prompt; then press **Enter**.
The FASTCFG utility opens.
- 2** Select **Games**; then select **OK**.

Creating a Boot Diskette

If you do not have enough memory for your games, you should make a *boot diskette* before starting the DOS games. To make a boot diskette, do the following:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start DOS.
- 2** Insert a blank diskette into the diskette drive.
- 3** Type MAKEBOOT at the DOS prompt; then press **Enter**.

A boot diskette is created. Before starting your games, restart the computer with this boot diskette inserted in the diskette drive.

Some sample files, such as the CONFIG.SYS file, are created on the boot diskette. You might need to modify these files by referring to the manuals that came with your games.

Default Values for DOS Games Audio

Most games automatically determine the I/O address, interrupt level (IRQ), and DMA channel settings for the audio for DOS games. If the game asks for this information, specify the default settings for Sound Blaster as follows:

I/O Address	220
IRQ	5
DMA Channel	1

If you need to change these settings:

Use the PS2 Audio command to set the features for the audio (see Appendix D, "Using PS2 Commands" on page 313 for more details.)

Select **DSP** from the ThinkPad Setup window and set features for the audio.

Using Mwave DSP Audio Features



Using the Function for Windows or WIN-OS/2

To use Mwave audio in Windows or WIN-OS/2, double-click on the **Mwave ThinkPad** icon in the Windows Program Manager.

Note:

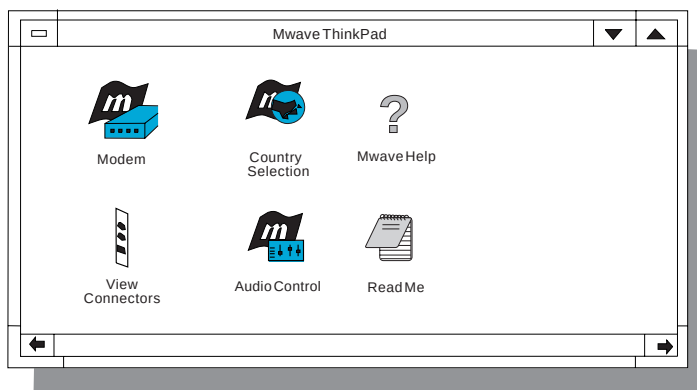
To use the Mwave audio features in WIN-OS/2, install the Mwave DSP support software for Windows in the full screen WIN-OS/2 session.

To install the Mwave DSP support software:

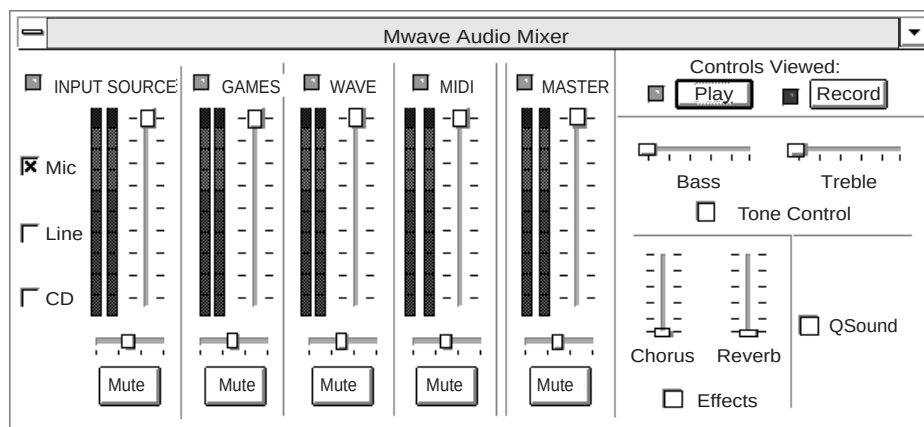


Chapter 7.

A window similar to the following appears:



Audio Control When you double-click on the **Audio Control** icon, the following window appears:



Using Mwave DSP Audio Features

This window allows you to control the audio volume:

Record

Enables you to select which source you want to use, to adjust the record level, or to monitor the input signal.

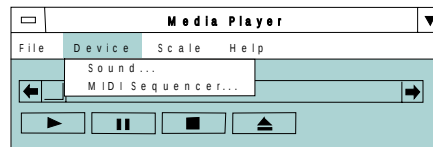
Output

Allows you to adjust the balance and sound levels and to control the mute option. It can be considered a stereo amplifier with three input signals, controls to mix the input signals, and a volume control for the output.

Playing the MIDI Sequencer Files

To play the MIDI sequencer files in Windows, use the Windows Media Player:

- 1** Start Windows; then open the **Accessories** group.
- 2** Double-click on the **Media Player** icon.
- 3** When the Media Player window appears, select **Device** on the menu bar; then select **MIDI Sequencer...** from the pull-down menu.



- 4** Highlight your favorite MIDI file with your pointing device; then click on **OK**.
- 5** To begin playing the MIDI file, click on the **Play** (▶) button.

Using Mwave DSP Telephony Features

Using the Telephony Function

Note:

In some countries, the Mwave telephony functions are only available with the DAA/Telephony Kit option installed. To install a DAA/Telephony Kit on the computer, see "Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit" on page 187 and the documentation that came with the option.

The computer is equipped with a modem/fax port on its side that connects a telephone cable. This section describes how to connect the cable to the computer, and describes the various telephony features that can be used for communication.

CAUTION:

You computer can only use a public-switched telephone network (PSTN). Do not use a PBX (private branch exchange) or other digital phone lines. Use of phone lines other than PSTN can damage your modem. If you are not sure which kind of phone line you are using, contact your telephone company.

Connecting the Telephone Cable

To use the telephony functions, you need to connect a telephone line to your computer.


DANGER

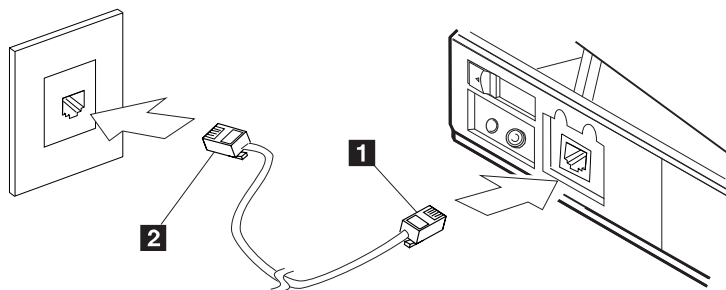
To avoid shock hazard, do not connect the cable to or disconnect the cable from the telephone outlet on the wall during electrical storms.

Note:

If you use both the computer and a telephone with one telephone cable, use the telephone cable supplied with your computer.

When you use the DAA/Telephony Kit (available as an option), see page 189.

When your computer has a modem/fax port with a square receptacle, connect the ferrite-core end (connector 1) of the telephone cable to the modem/fax port; then connect the other end (2) to the telephone outlet on the wall.



Using Mwave DSP Telephony Features

Important

Make sure you use the correct telephone line so your modem operates correctly. When you are:

At home: Use an *analog* line; a standard household telephone.

In your office: Use a line connected to a fax machine or another modem.

In a hotel: Request a room with a data or normal telephone line.

Your RJ11 jack must be wired for an analog line. If you are not sure what type of line you are connecting, check with the telephone company.

DOS

Using for the Modem DOS

To start the Mwave modem for DOS, do the following:

1 Type FASTCFG at the DOS prompt; then press **Enter**.

The FASTCFG utility opens.

2 Select **Advanced Modem**; then select **OK**.

Using Mwave DSP Telephony Features



Mwave Data Modem

The Mwave telephony features support direct attachment to a public-switched telephone network (PSTN). The Mwave data modem supports the standard communication port interface and can be used with the communications programs that use the Hayes** AT command set.

The Mwave data modem provides the following features:

- Standard asynchronous communications port interface (NS16550A UART compatible) operation

- Bell**-103/212A, ITU-T V.32bis protocols with data from 50 to 2400 bps

- ITU-T V.32bis protocols with data rates of 4800, 9600 uncoded, and 9600 bps Trellis coded (optional)

- ITU-T V.32bis protocols with data rates of 4800, 7200, 9600, 12 000, and 14 400 bps (optional)

- Hayes AT command set compatibility

- Call progress monitoring

- Automatic dialing

- Dual-tone modulation frequency (DTMF) and pulse dialing

- Asynchronous error recovery protocol

- Error correction via Microcom Network Protocol (MNP**) classes 1–4

- MNP class 5 for up to 2x data compression

- Functional upgrades via software

- ITU-T V.42bis error correction



Using Country Selection

Important

Each country has restrictions on communications that use telephone lines. Use this window whenever you travel to other countries.

Note:

In some countries, the Mwave modem functions are only available with the DAA/Telephony Kit option is installed.

The Country Selection window allows you to change the country name currently supported by the Mwave telephony features. When you travel to other countries and use the Mwave telephony function, you need to select the country name from the list of countries in this window.

Mwave Fax Modem

The Mwave telephony features offer you the following fax functions:

- Call progress monitoring

- Automatic dialing

- Support for a Windows MCI** FAX application interface

- Use of direct memory access (DMA) instead of a communications port to increase performance

- DTMF and pulse dialing

- G3 transfers

- T.4/T.30 operations

- V.27ter — 2400/4800 bps send/receive

- V.29 — 7200/9600 bps send/receive

- V.17 — 14400/14400 bps send/receive

Using Mwave DSP Telephony Features

Mwave Telephone Answering Machine

Note:

When you use the telephone answering machine function, refer to the manual that came with the application program package.

The Mwave telephony features allow you to use the computer as a telephone answering machine by:

- Recording greetings and messages through the microphone
- Playing back greetings and messages through the speaker or headphones
- Playing back greetings and messages to a remote telephone
- Recording messages from a remote telephone
- Providing a full-duplex speaker phone capability using the microphone and speaker
- Supporting both tone (DTMF) and pulse dialing
- Using voice compression to minimize disk space for stored greetings and messages
- Using a Windows MCI Telephony application program interface
- Using a high-performance DMA interface
- Speeding up or slowing down played messages without affecting their pitch (TDHS)
- Detecting DTMF digits received from phone line

Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features

Note:

When installing an operating system, you must install the Enhanced Video device driver, MPEG device driver, and Mwave device driver to use the Enhanced Video/MPEG features.

The computer provides the enhanced video and video in/out ports on the side of the computer to attach your home video equipment. It also provides the total image video with MPEG1 and MPEG2. For MPEG2, decoding of up to 352-by-480 resolution is supported. This resolution is called MPEG2 HHR (half-horizontal resolution) or Half D1.

With the Enhanced Video/MPEG features, you can take advantage of the following:

Smooth Playback

Play back motion video with a smooth picture.

MPEG Playback

The MPEG Playback viewer can play back many available CD-I movies, video CDs, and *Karaoke* MPEG video titles. No DOS/CD-I game titles are currently supported. MPEG2 titles are restricted to HHR at 4 Mbps.

Video-Out

Use a NTSC (National Television Standards Committee) or a PAL (phase-alternation-by-line) television to display information from the computer.

Video-In (Video Capture)

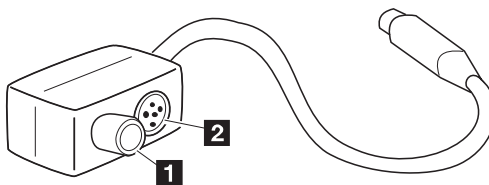
- Capture still images or motion video from the video-in port by using the Digital Video Producer (DVP).
- Overlay motion video from the video-in port.

Important

When using the Enhanced Video/MPEG features, use 800-by-600 resolution mode.

Using the Video Functions

Two video in/out cables are supplied with the computer to connect a television, video cassette recorder (VCR), or other video equipment. You can receive or send video signals through the video ports in different signal formats using these cables. Use the composite video port 1 when using the composite video signal format. This combines the color and brightness into one signal. For better picture quality, use the S-video port 2. This port separates the color and brightness into two signals to improve the quality of the picture.



Considerations When Using the Enhanced Video/MPEG Features

When using the Enhanced Video/MPEG features, keep the following in mind:

You cannot enable or disable the Enhanced Video/MPEG features, or change from video-in to video-out, while the playback or capture window is open. Close the playback or capture window before you make changes.

Smooth Playback, MPEG Playback, and Video-In functions utilize the same hardware resources, so that only one of the functions can be used at a time.

Using Smooth Playback

The Enhanced Video/MPEG features enable smooth playback under playback application programs supported by Video for Windows** or compatible software and your computer. With smooth playback, the frame rate of your motion video does not decrease even when the video clip is enlarged.

Using the Video Functions

Notes

When using smooth playback on TV, the cursor might not be visible when it is moved on the playing window.

When using smooth playback on TV, portions of other windows moved on top of the playing window might not be visible.

Not all applications support smooth playback on TV.

Using the Video Functions

Using MPEG Playback

The MPEG features enable hardware to decode MPEG playback files under playback application programs supported by Media Player and your computer. To use the MPEG playback feature:



When you are using OS2:

- 1** Open the **Multimedia** folder.
- 2** Click on **Digital Video**.
- 3** Click on **Option**.
- 4** Click on **Change device**.
- 5** Choose **IBM MPEG2** to play MPEG files or choose **CD-i/videoCD** to play a CD-I movie, video CD, or *Karaoke* CD.
- 6** When you want to play a Video-CD or CD-I movie from the CD-ROM drive of your computer, click on the **Play** icon. Otherwise, select the MPEG file you want to play; then click on the **Play** icon.

Note:

MPEG playback on TV is supported only for full-screen mode.



When you are using Windows:

- 1** Open **Media Player**.
- 2** Click on **Device Driver**.
- 3** Do one of the following:
 - When you want to play MPEG files, choose **IBM MPEG2**.
 - When you want to play a movie or CD, choose **CD-i/VideoCD**.
- 4** When you want to play a video CD or CD-I movie from the CD-ROM drive of your computer, click on the **Play** icon. Otherwise, select the MPEG file you want to play; then click on the **Play** icon.

Important

MPEG playback on TV is supported only in full-screen mode.

You can also use the *IBM Video CD Player* program to play a video CD or CD-I in Windows. For information on how to use this application, *Help* is available.

Using the Video Functions

Using the Video-Out Feature

To connect a television or other video equipment to the video-out port:

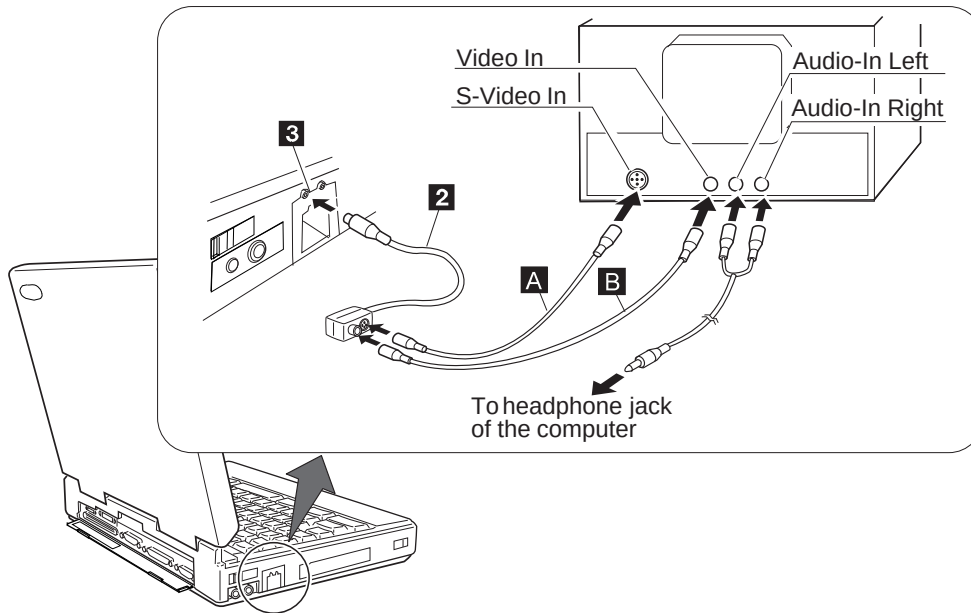
- 1** Turn off the computer.
- 2** Connect the video in/out cable 2 to the video-out port 3 of the computer; then connect your video equipment.

Cables, except for the video in/out cables 2, are not supplied with the computer.

If you are using video equipment with S-video input, connect the S-video port of the video in/out cable to the S-video-in connector of your video equipment (A) for better picture quality.

If you are **not** using video equipment with S-video input, connect the composite video port of the video in/out cable and the video-in connector of your video equipment (B).

If your video equipment has only one audio input connector, use the left-audio connector on the audio cable for connection.

Using the Video Functions**3** Select either NTSC or PAL color standards:

- a) Open the ThinkPad Features program.
- b) Select the **Enhanced Video** icon.
- c) Click on **Advanced**.
- d) Click on **Enable** (default value) for Enhanced Video.
- e) Click on **Video out**; then click on **NTSC** or **PAL** according to the color standard for your equipment.

Click on the **Help** button in the Enhanced Video Setting menu to check the color standard for your country.

Choose "Fit to screen" if the image does not fit in the TV screen. However, the quality of the picture may degrade. When you do not choose "Fit to screen," a panning utility will be displayed on the OS/2 or Windows screen, which enables you to pan the display area.

Using the Video Functions

Using the Video-In Feature, Video Capture, and Video Overlay

You can capture still images or motion video using video capture application programs and the video-in port of the computer. If you are using Windows, you can use capture applications supported by Video for Windows and your computer. You can also overlay motion video from the video-in port by using applications supported by MCI (Media Control Interface) overlay.

Important

While using the video capture function, the video-out port is disabled.

To capture motion video:

- 1** Turn off the computer.
- 2** Connect the video in/out cable 2 to the video-in port 1 of the computer; then connect your video equipment.

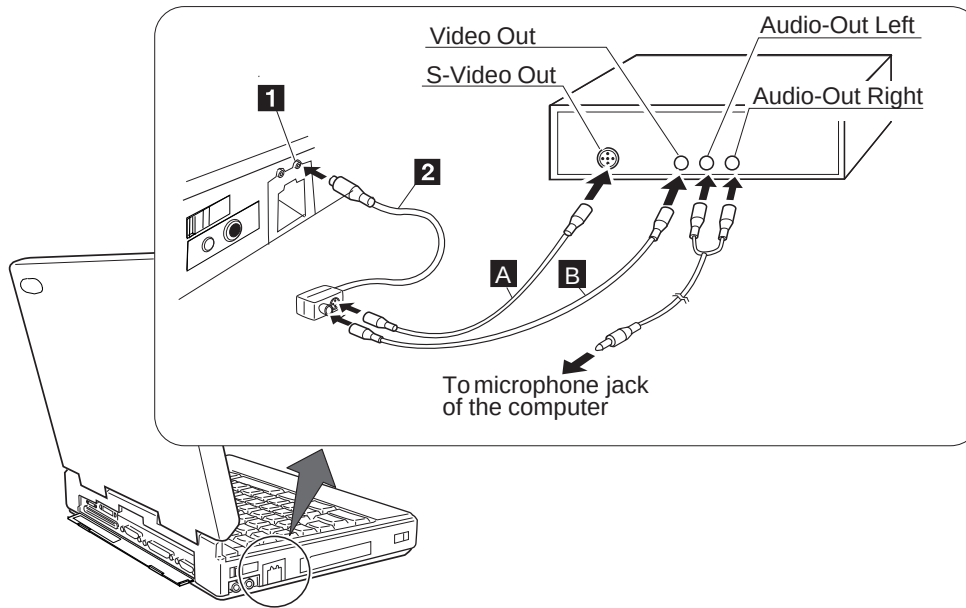
Cables, except for the video in/out cables 2, are not supplied with the computer.

If you are using video equipment with S-video output, connect the S-video port of the video in/out cable to the S-video-out connector of your video equipment A for better picture quality.

If you are **not** using video equipment with S-video output, connect the composite video port of the video in/out cable and the video-out port of your video equipment B.

If your video equipment has only one audio output connector, use the left-audio connector on the audio cable for connection.

Using the Video Functions



3 Set the video-in port to on.

- Open the ThinkPad Features program.
- Select the **Enhanced Video** icon.
- Click on **Advanced**.
- Click on **Enable** (default value) for Enhanced Video.
- Click on **Video in** (default value).

4 Select the IRQ of your choice (the default IRQ is 9).

5 Exit Windows and reboot the computer to make the IRQ setting take effect.

6 Start the video capturing application program.

Considerations When Using the Video-In Feature and Video Capture

When using the video-in feature or video capture, keep the following in mind:

You cannot run the video playback and capture applications at the same time. Close the active playback application before

Using the Video Functions

using video capture, or vice versa. When using the Digital Video Producer, you can click on the **Exit** button in the Player window instead of closing the application.

Only one capture window can be open at a time.

When you use video capture with the overlay screen on, the capturing screen might be distorted. However, the data is correctly captured.

Capturing Video Files or Still Images

The following information is a quick overview of how to capture a video file or still image. To search this file for the topic you want, use the Find command on the Search menu to locate the following:

- Capturing, compressing, and building a video file

- Capturing a still image

- Using the DVP Help system

The procedures are intended to help you get started. They do not explain in detail why you would choose certain options, or what you would choose to create video files and still images with different characteristics. For detailed explanations of the options you're choosing, refer to these sections of the DVP online Help system: DVP Capture and Overview of Creating a Video.

Capturing, Compressing, and Building a Video File

This example procedure describes how to capture a video clip, import it into DVP, and build a compressed .AVI file that you can use in a presentation and other computer-based materials. The video file created in this example has the following characteristics. (You need approximately 17 megabytes (MB) of hard disk space to capture a video file.)

Frame size	160 pels by 120 pels
Color (bit depth)	RGB 16-bit
Frame rate	15 frames per second
Number of seconds	30 seconds
Audio sampling rates	8-bit, 11.025 kHz, mono

Important

Make sure your video source (such as a VCR or video camera) is correctly connected to your computer before you start the video capture. If you choose Overlay Mode from the Options menu in DVP Capture, you can verify the connection and look at your video both before and during the capture.

To capture, compress, and build a video file:

- 1** Start DVP; then choose **Video Capture** from the Tools menu.
- 2** Choose **Set Capture File** from the File menu.
- 3** Enter a name for your capture file (such as CAPTURE.AVI) and specify the directory in which to save the file; then click on **OK**.
- 4** Choose **Allocate File Space** from the File menu and enter 17MB as the hard disk space to set aside for your capture file; then click on **OK**.

For more information on calculating the space you need, see page 95.
- 5** Choose **Audio Format** from the Options menu.
- 6** Choose these sound options: 8-bit, 11kHz, Mono; then click on **OK**.
- 7** Choose **Video Format** from the Options menu.
- 8** Choose 160 by 120 for Input Dimensions and RGB 16-bit for Input Format; then click on **OK**.
- 9** Choose **Video Source** from the Options menu, the type of video connector your video source uses (Video or S-Video), and **Auto** for Color Standard or **Standard Video** for Video Standard; then click **OK**.

The Auto option determines automatically whether your video source produces an NTSC or a PAL video signal, and it sets up the video capture for you. If you know what type of video signal your video source produces, you can specify it yourself.

Using the Video Functions

As a rule, equipment sold in Japan and North America produces an NTSC signal, whereas equipment sold in Europe and other parts of the world produces a PAL signal.

- 10** Choose **Settings** from the Capture menu and specify the following options:

Frame Rate 15 frames per second

Enable Capture Time Limit 30 seconds

Capture Storage Capture to Disk

End Capture Using Escape Key

- 11** Click on **OK**; then also check Capture Audio.

- 12** To start the video capture, choose **Video** from the Capture menu, or click the **Video** button.

DVP Capture saves the file with the name you specified in step 3 on page 93. You can then save the file to a new name by choosing **Save Captured File As** from the File menu.

- 13** Choose **Exit** from the File menu to close DVP Capture and return to DVP.

DVP automatically imports the video file you just captured and displays it in the Media Window.

- 14** Drag your video clip from the Media Window onto the tick bar (directly above the Video A track on the timeline).

Dragging a clip onto the tick bar is an efficient way to lay out your clip because the video and audio information in the file appears automatically on both the Video A and Audio A tracks. You can also lay out a video clip on the timeline by dragging it first from the Media Window to a video track, and then from the Media Window to an audio track.

- 15** Choose **Compression** from the Video menu to specify the compression/decompression (CODEC) routine you want to use.

- 16** Choose **Intel Indeo** Video R3.2** for Compressor and accept the default values for Key Frame Every and Data Rate; then click on **OK**.

17 Choose **Build** from the Video menu, or click on the **Build** button (the sixth button from the top on the toolbar). Enter the name and location of your final .AVI file (making sure to keep the .AVI extension); then click on **Build**.

The Build Progress dialog box opens, so you can look at the percentage-complete bar and the preview window to track the progress of the build. Building a video can take anywhere from a few minutes to several hours, depending on its length and complexity, and on the type of compressor you choose. This procedure should take approximately 14 minutes.

Calculating Hard Disk Space: You can easily calculate the amount of hard disk space you need to capture a video clip using the following formula:

$$\text{Frame size (pels per frame)} \times \text{Color depth (bytes per pel)} \times \text{Frame rate} \times \text{Number of seconds} = \text{Video in bytes}$$

$$\text{Sampling size (bytes per channel)} \times \text{Number of channels (channels per sample)} \times \text{Sampling rate} \times \text{Number of seconds} = \text{Audio in bytes}$$

$$\text{Video in bytes} / \text{Audio in bytes} = \text{Amount of hard disk space in bytes}$$

For example, we calculated the space you need to capture the file example as follows:

$$(160 \times 120 \text{ pels/frame}) (2 \text{ bytes/pel}) (15 \text{ frames/second}) (30 \text{ seconds}) = 17\,280\,000 \text{ bytes of video}$$

$$[(8 \text{ bits/channel}) (1 \text{ byte/8 bits})] (1 \text{ channel/sample}) (11\,025 \text{ samples/second}) (30 \text{ seconds}) = 330\,750 \text{ bytes of audio}$$

$$17\,610\,750 \text{ bytes} / 1\,048\,576 \text{ bytes} = 16.794 \text{ megabytes}$$

If, when you follow the procedure, you want to capture more or less than 30 seconds of video and audio, you can adjust how much hard disk space to allocate by substituting the number of seconds you plan to capture in the preceding calculation.

Using the Video Functions

Capturing a Still Image

This example describes how to capture a still image that has the following characteristics:

Frame size	320 pels by 240 pels
Color (bit depth)	RGB 24-bit

Important

Be sure your video source (such as a VCR or video camera) is correctly connected to your computer before you capture the still image. If you choose Overlay Mode from the Options menu in DVP Capture, you can verify the connection and look at your still image before you capture it.

To capture a still image:

- 1** Start DVP; then choose **Video Capture** from the Tools menu.
- 2** Choose **Video Format** from the Options menu; then choose 320 by 240 for Input Dimensions and RGB 24-bit for Input Format, and click on **OK**.

Note:

Because many paint programs, such as Windows Paintbrush, do not yet support 16-bit still images, you will typically capture 8-bit or 24-bit still images.

For the best color display, make sure that you install and choose the 65536 (16-bit) video display driver. As a rule, the color depth of your image should match the color depth of the device that will display it, so you would display an 8-bit image on an 8-bit display device and a 24-bit image on a 24-bit display device. However, 24-bit images also look good on 16-bit displays (though they tend to display a little more slowly than on 24-bit displays).

Using the Video Functions

- 3 Choose **Video Source** from the Options menu; then choose the type of video connector your video source uses (Video or S-Video) and **Auto** for Color Standard or **Standard Video** for Video Standard. Then click on **OK**.

The **Auto** option determines automatically whether your video source produces an NTSC or a PAL video signal, and sets up the video for you. If you know what type of video signal your video source produces, you can specify it yourself.

As a rule, equipment sold in Japan and North America produces an NTSC signal, whereas equipment sold in Europe and other parts of the world produces a PAL signal.

- 4 When the image you want to capture appears in the Preview window, choose **Single Frame** from the Capture menu, or click on the **Single Frame** button (the fourth button from the right).
- 5 Choose **Save Single Frame** from the File menu to save it as a bitmap file (with a .BMP extension).

Using the DVP Help System

To learn more about DVP or DVP Capture, choose **Contents** from the Help menu to display the Contents screen of the online Help system, or press the **F1** key.

To open a specific online help topic:

- 1 Start DVP; then press **F1**.
- 2 On the Help window's toolbar, click on **Search**.
- 3 Type the search word you want to find (such as "compression").
- 4 Click on **Show Topics** and select a Topic Name; then click on **Go To**.

Using the Video Functions

Using the Overlay with Media Player in Windows



To use the overlay function with Windows Media Player, do the following:

- 1** Open **Media Player** in Windows.
- 2** Click on **Device Driver**.
- 3** Choose **IBM Video Overlay**.
- 4** Click on the **Play** icon.

Using the Diskette Drive

The CD-ROM drive can be removed and be replaced with the internal diskette drive supplied with the computer. Replace the CD-ROM drive with the diskette drive when installing software or device drivers from diskettes. When using DOS or Windows, you can replace the drives without turning off the computer.

To install the diskette drive:

Note:

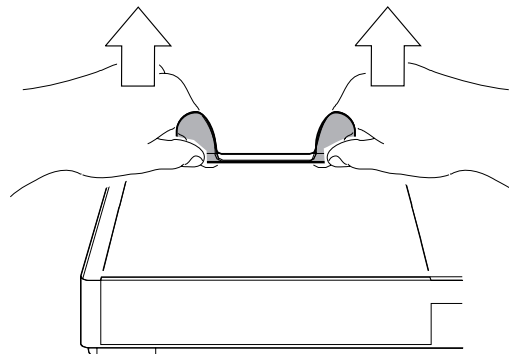
If you are using DOS or Windows, the CD-ROM drive can be removed without turning off the computer. Refer to the documents supplied with your operating systems.

Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

The CD-ROM and diskette drive are very delicate devices that need careful handling. Do not press on, drop, or apply any shock to the drives when they are removed from the computer.

- 1** Close any CD-ROM applications and make sure the CD-ROM tray is closed.
- 2** Open the LCD; then open the keyboard.
- 3** Lift the handle on the CD-ROM drive with the plastic tape, and remove the CD-ROM drive.

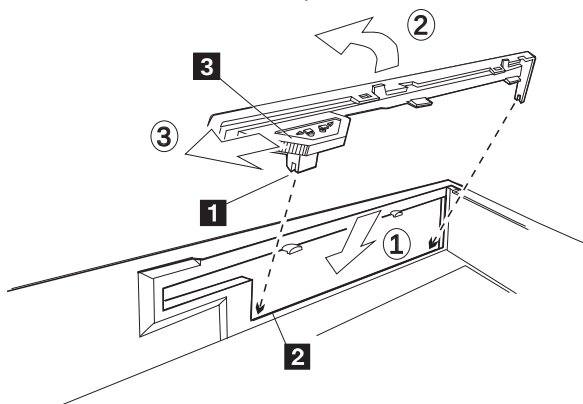


Using the Diskette Drive

4 Install the diskette drive bezel from the *inner* side of the computer.

- a) Fit notch 1 on the lower portion of the bezel into the catch at the bottom of the drive bezel slot 2.
- b) Push the upper portion of the bezel into the slot until it snaps into place.
- c) Slide the lever 3 on the bezel to the left as shown.

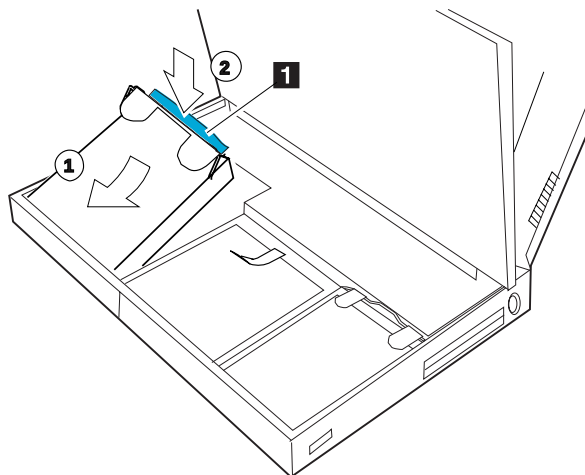
The following figure shows the installation as seen from the inner side of the computer.



Warning:

The diskette drive is a very delicate device. Do not press on the middle part of the drive.

- 5** Install the diskette drive. Press area 1 until the drive snaps into the connector.



- 6** Close the keyboard; then reconnect all cables.

You have completed the installation of the diskette drive.

Using CD-ROMs

Using the CD-ROM Drive

Warning:

Do not touch the lens on the CD-ROM tray.

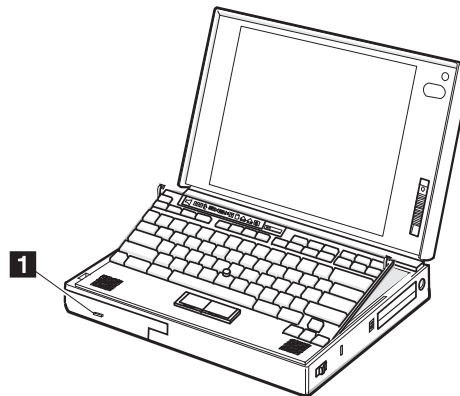
The computer comes with a 5-inch CD-ROM drive so you can use compact discs. The CD-ROM drive can also be removed so that the internal diskette drive or other IBM options can be installed (see "Installing an Option in the UltraBay" on page 184.)

The following CDs are supported by the computer:

- Music CDs
- Photo CDs
- CD-ROM or CD-ROM XA
- Video CDs, CD-I movies, and so on.

To use the CD-ROM:

- 1** Turn on the computer.
- 2** Push the CD-ROM eject button **1** on the front of the computer; then pull out the CD-ROM tray.

**Warning:**

Hold the compact disc by the edges. Do not touch the surface of the compact disc.

- 3** Carefully insert your CD-ROM onto the CD-ROM tray; then push the tray into the computer until it fully closes.

You might find the following hints for easier use of the CD-ROM drive helpful:

The computer supports “warm plugging” of the CD-ROM and diskette drive under DOS and Windows; you can exchange the CD-ROM or diskette drive during suspend mode.

When you turn on the computer with no internal or external diskette drive installed, the default A drive is set to the UltraBay. You can set the A drive to the internal diskette drive or to an external device, such as an external diskette drive or a port replicator or expansion unit. Use one of the following PS2 commands.

PS2 FDD E Sets the A drive to a device external to the computer.

PS2 FDD I Sets the A drive to the diskette drive in the UltraBay.

PS2 ? FDD Displays more information about the FDD command.

Using CD-ROMs

Playing Media

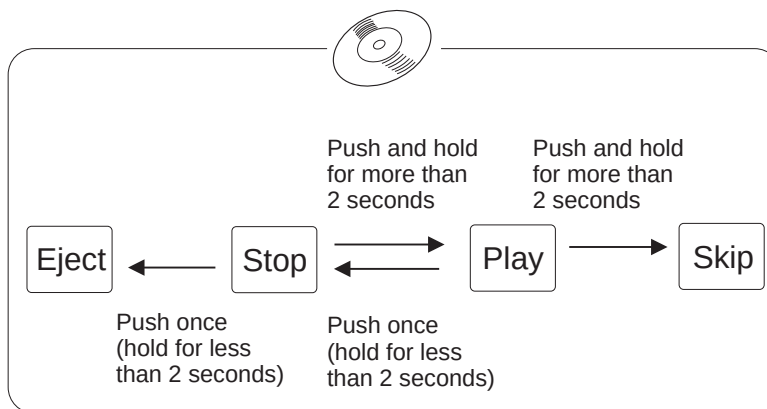
To play media on the CD-ROM drive, do one of the following:

Note:

Before playing the CD-ROM drive with the eject button, the sound features must be enabled in your operating system. Refer to the documentation that came with your operating system.

Playing a CD-ROM with the CD-ROM Drive Eject Button

You can play and stop the CD-ROM set in the CD-ROM drive with the CD-ROM drive eject button as follows:



Function	Operation by the CD-ROM drive eject button
To play a CD-ROM	Push and hold the button for more than 2 seconds
To skip to the next track	Push and hold the button for more than 2 seconds
To stop playing the CD-ROM	Push and hold the button for less than 2 seconds
To eject the CD-ROM	Push and hold the button for less than 2 seconds

Playing a CD-ROM from an Application



When using OS/2, select **Compact Disc** in the Multimedia folder; then select **Auxiliary Control** in the Mwave for OS/2 folder.



When using Windows:

- 1** Open the Mwave Audio Control menu; then make sure of the following:

AUX Mute is set to off.

Click on the **Options...** button; then make sure that **Line** or **CD+Line** is selected as the AUX source.

- 2** Open the **Accessories** group; then open the **Media Player**.

- 3** Select **Device** from the Media Player window; then select **CD Audio** from the pull-down menu.

Important

When there is no CD in the CD-ROM drive, make sure the Media Player window is closed. Otherwise, other programs that are open will run very slowly.

To listen to a music CD while working with another program, close the Media Player window after starting the CD for better performance.

Handling Compact Discs

Compact discs are high-density media that must be handled with care and kept clean to ensure that they remain readable. Keep in mind the following to ensure their reliability.

1. Hold the compact disc by the edges. Do not touch the surface of the compact disc.
2. To remove dust or fingerprints, wipe the compact disc from the center to the outside of the disc.
3. Do not write on the surface.
4. Do not store or place the compact disc in direct sunlight.
5. Do not use benzene, thinners, or other cleaners to clean the compact disc. Use a CD-ROM cleaner kit.
6. Do not flex or bend the compact disc.

Warning:

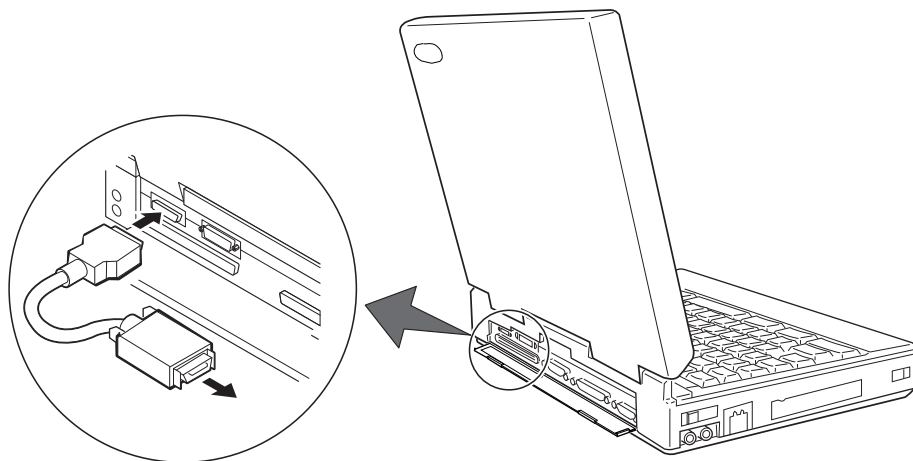
Wiping the compact disc in a circular direction can cause loss of data.

Using the MIDI/Joystick Port

Using the MIDI/Joystick Port

The computer provides a MIDI/Joystick port on the rear of the computer for MIDI (musical instrument digital interface) equipment or a joystick for playing games. A MIDI/Joystick cable is supplied with the computer to connect a joystick. When connecting MIDI equipment, *you have to purchase a MIDI connector to connect musical instruments with MIDI ports.*

Turn off the computer; then connect the MIDI/Joystick cable to the computer as shown:



Connect the other side of the cable to a MINI-DIN cable or a connector that connects to your MIDI equipment or joystick.

Chapter 4. Using Battery Power

This chapter describes battery pack operations.

Charging the Battery Pack	108
Charging with the AC Adapter	108
Charging with the Quick Charger	109
Replacing the Battery Pack	110
Monitoring the Battery Status	112
Using the Battery Status Indicator	112
Battery Status Indicator	112
Low-Battery Condition	114
Remaining Battery Indicator	114
Using the Fuel-Gauge Program	116
Discharging the Battery Pack for OS/2 and Windows	119
Preserving Battery-Pack Life	120
Maximizing Battery-Powered Operation	120
Using Advanced Power Management	121
Decreasing LCD Brightness	123
Using the Battery Power-Management Function	123
Standby Mode	125
Suspend Modes	125
Considerations for Suspend Mode	127
Hibernation Mode	129
Creating the Hibernation File	129
Considerations for Hibernation Mode	131

Battery-Powered Operation

Charging the Battery Pack

Note:

When you charge the lithium ion battery pack, the battery pack temperature must be at least 10°C (50°F).

You can charge the battery pack when the AC Adapter is connected to the computer and the battery pack is installed. You must charge the battery pack in any of the following conditions:

When a new battery pack is purchased.

When the battery status indicator starts blinking .

Hints and Tips

You can use an optional battery pack and install it in the UltraBay and have two battery packs for long battery-powered operation.

When you have two battery packs installed in the computer and start charging, charging starts on the battery pack in the battery pack bay. When it is fully charged, charging starts on the battery pack installed in the UltraBay.

Charging with the AC Adapter

Note:

When carrying your computer without the AC Adapter, carry with you a fully charged battery pack for maximum operating hours. You can also have an optional battery pack and use two battery packs for operation.

When the AC Adapter is connected and the power remaining in the installed battery pack is less than a certain amount, discharging and then charging of the battery pack starts automatically. The discharge LCD indicator appears .

The following table shows the approximate charging times for the battery pack.

Conditions	Charging Time
Operational Charging	1.7 hours
Power-off Charging	1.5 hours
Suspend-mode Charging	1.5 hours

If the battery pack is new or has not been used for a long period of time, it will not be fully charged with only a single charging. You will have to discharge and recharge it three to six times to maximize battery operating time.

Battery-Powered Operation

The following describes how to recharge the battery pack with the AC Adapter when the computer is turned off:

- 1 Make sure the computer is turned off, and a new or discharged battery pack is installed in the computer.
- 2 Connect the AC Adapter to the computer.

The system status indicators show the following:

Indicator	Meaning
	The battery pack is being charged. The charge indicator () turns off when the battery is fully charged.

Charging with the Quick Charger

The Quick Charger is available to charge the battery packs. For the charging procedure, refer to the instructions supplied with the Quick Charger.

The LCD indicator panel shows the following when using the Quick Charger with the computer power on or off:

When power is on	When power is off
	
—	

Replacing the Battery Pack

Replacing the Battery Pack

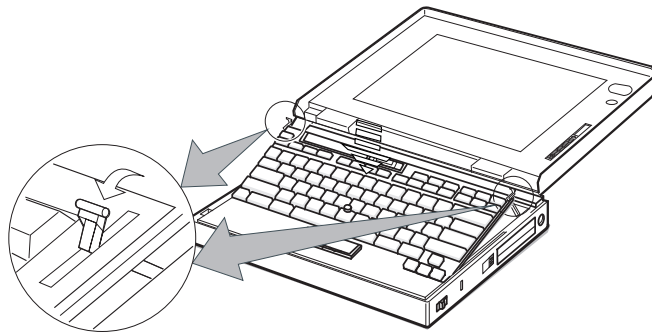
A spare battery pack is available as an option. Replace the current battery pack when it is low in power.

The battery pack can be replaced with computer power on or off. To replace the battery pack without turning off the computer, follow these instructions.

Important

If you are using PC Cards, either connect the AC Adapter or stop the PC Card application and remove the PC Card before doing the following.

- 1** Open the LCD so it lies flat; then slide the keyboard raiser on the side of the computer toward you so the keyboard lies flat on the computer.



- 2** Open the keyboard.

The computer automatically enters suspend mode. Wait for the beep, which indicates that the computer has completely entered suspend mode.

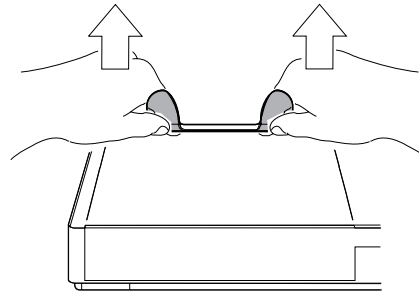
Replacing the Battery Pack

Warning:

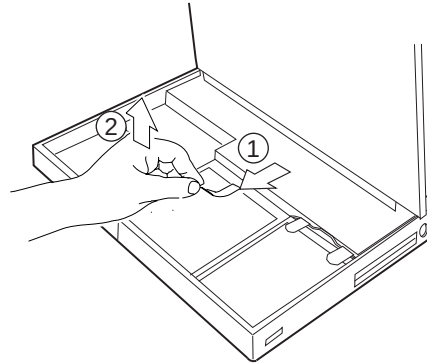
Make sure the CD-ROM tray is closed and no CD is in the CD-ROM drive.

- 3** Lift the handle on the CD-ROM drive with the plastic tape, and remove the CD-ROM drive.

Some pressure might be needed to remove the CD-ROM drive if it is tight.



- 4** Pull the battery pack toward the front of the computer; then quickly remove the battery pack and replace it with a fully charged spare.

**Warning:**

Do not press on the middle part of the CD-ROM drive.

- 5** Reinstall the CD-ROM drive.

Make sure the CD-ROM handle snaps into place after installing the CD-ROM drive.

- 6** Close the keyboard. The computer resumes normal operation.

If the computer does not resume normal operation, press the **Fn** key.

Using the Battery Status Indicator

Monitoring the Battery Status

Battery power conditions can be determined through the battery status indicator and the Fuel-Gauge program.

Using the Battery Status Indicator

The main battery status indicator shows the current status of the battery pack (only when the battery is installed).

Battery Status Indicator

Observe the main battery status indicator  and compare it with the status list below to determine the battery condition.

Indicator	Remaining Power (Percentage)	Status/Action Required
	100%–75%	The battery pack is fully charged.
	75%–50%	Enough power remains for computer operation.
	50%–25%	
	Less than 25 %	

Using the Battery Status Indicator

Note:

When the AC Adapter is connected and the power remaining in the installed battery pack is less than a certain amount, discharging and then charging of the battery pack starts automatically.

Indicator	Remaining Power (Percentage)	Status/Action Required
 (Blinking)	Approximately 10 minutes remains for operation.	The battery pack is almost discharged and is about to enter the low-battery condition (see page 114). You will hear three beeps when this indicator turns on. Take either of the following actions immediately: Connect the AC Adapter to the computer; leave the battery pack installed. Replace the battery pack with a fully charged spare (see "Replacing the Battery Pack" on page 110).
	Percentage of charging completed. (Up to 100%)	(Only appears when the AC Adapter is connected.) The battery pack is being charged. See page 109 for more information.
	Percentage of discharging completed. (Down to 0%)	The battery pack is being discharged (or is being used). See page 119 for more information.
Off (Not displayed)	—	The battery pack is not installed. The computer is turned off.

When using a secondary battery pack...

When you are using a secondary battery pack (available as an option) in the UltraBay, the battery status indicator appears for *both* battery packs installed in the computer.



The main battery-status indicator () is for the battery pack installed in the battery-pack bay, and the secondary battery-status indicator () is for the secondary battery pack installed in the UltraBay.

Using the Battery Status Indicator

Low-Battery Condition

Warning:
Do not leave the computer in this condition for an extended period of time. Data in memory will be lost.

For necessary actions:
 Page 113.

When the battery pack is low in power, the remaining battery indicators start to blink. Ten seconds after the indicators start to blink, the computer sounds three consecutive beeps and the last rectangle in the battery status indicator starts to blink (). The battery pack needs to be charged immediately. If corrective actions are not taken within 10 minutes, the computer will enter suspend mode.

Remaining Battery Indicator

The remaining battery indicator shows the remaining battery status in digits. This includes the overall power remaining for the battery pack in the battery-pack bay (and the battery pack in the UltraBay, if installed).

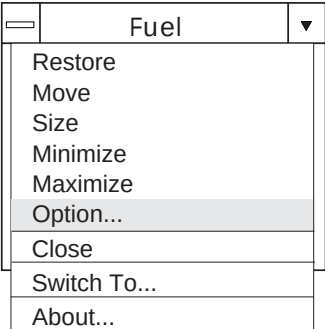
Refer to the following table to determine the remaining battery power:

Indicator	Meaning
	The remaining power is displayed in days. In this example, battery power remaining is 2 days.
	The remaining power is displayed in hours and minutes. When the remaining power is more than 10 hours, an “h” suffix appears besides the number (for example, ). In this example, battery power remaining is 2 hours and 50 minutes.

Using the Battery Status Indicator

Indicator	Meaning
	The remaining power is displayed in percentage. When the charge symbol () appears next to a battery status indicator, it shows what percentage is complete. In this example, battery pack charging (indicated with the charge symbol), is 70% complete, or 70% of battery power remains. When using a secondary battery, the percentage indicates the total remaining power for both battery packs, up to 100%.

To change how to display the remaining power between the hours and percent, select **Option...** from the pull-down menu of the Fuel-Gauge program; then click on your choice to display the remaining power.



Using the Fuel-Gauge Program



Using the Fuel-Gauge Program

Note:

When you install an operating system, you must also install the ThinkPad Features program with the Utility Diskette before the Fuel-Gauge program can be used.

The Fuel-Gauge program displays the following battery-pack conditions on the screen:

- Power mode
- Battery status
- Suspend or hibernation options
- Discharge option

To install the ThinkPad Features program:



Chapter 7.

Note:

Repeatedly charging a battery pack that has not been completely discharged shortens the battery operating time. To preserve battery operating time, discharge the battery pack completely, then recharge it.

The Fuel-Gauge program is available in OS/2 or Windows. When you click on the Fuel-Gauge icon in the ThinkPad Features window, the Fuel-Gauge program appears. When you minimize the program to an icon, every time you press the **Fn+F2** key combination, the Fuel-Gauge icon appears or disappears alternately from the screen.

Refer to the following descriptions and illustrations, which depend on the power source, of the Fuel-Gauge program.

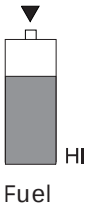
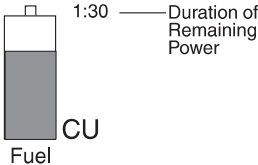
Maximized Fuel-Gauge program:

- The “Duration of Remaining Power” does not appear when the AC Adapter is connected.

AC Adapter Connected	Battery Operation
Charge-In-Progress Suspend Button Fuel Hibernation Button 70% Percentage of Remaining Power Current Power Mode (AC/High) Gauge Discharge Button	Fuel 70% [1:30] Duration of Remaining Power

Minimized (to an icon) Fuel-Gauge program:

- The power source (AC Adapter or battery) and power mode alternately appear:
 - **Power source**
 - AC** AC Adapter
 - BT** Battery
 - **Power mode**
 - HI** High Performance
 - AU** Automatic
 - CU** Customized

AC Adapter connected	Battery operation
	

Using the Fuel-Gauge Program

When you have a secondary battery pack in the UltraBay, the following figure is displayed for the Fuel-Gauge program.

Maximized Fuel-Gauge program:

- When you double-click on the power remaining percentage, the percentage for the main battery pack (displayed with a “1” in front), secondary battery pack (displayed with a “2” in front), and the average of the two battery packs alternately appear.

For example:

1 35% 2 49% 42%

AC Adapter connected	Battery operation

Minimized (to an icon) Fuel-Gauge program:

AC Adapter connected	Battery operation

Using the Fuel-Gauge Program

Discharging the Battery Pack for OS/2 and Windows

When the battery pack needs to be discharged, the computer prompts you with a message. To discharge the battery, connect the AC Adapter to the computer and click on the discharge button () on the Fuel-Gauge program.

When the power remaining for the installed battery pack is less than a certain amount, discharging and then charging of the battery pack starts automatically.

The discharge-in-progress () appears above the gauge symbol, and the charge button () appears in place of the Discharge button.

On the system indicator panel, the indicator showing that the battery pack is being discharged appears:



You can use the computer while the battery pack is discharging; however, do not enter suspend mode or turn off the computer until the discharge is complete.

When the battery pack is completely discharged, charging starts automatically.

To cancel discharging, click on the charge icon ()

Maximizing Battery-Powered Operation

Preserving Battery-Pack Life

To preserve the life of the battery pack:

Warning:

Make sure the battery pack power is completely used before you recharge it. Recharging a battery pack that is not completely discharged can shorten battery life.

Do not charge the battery pack until all of its power is used.

Once you have started charging the battery pack, do not use it until it is fully charged.

Discharge the battery pack occasionally by using the Fuel-Gauge program.

Turn off the computer whenever it is not in use.

Maximizing Battery-Powered Operation

To save battery power:

Use Advanced Power Management (APM)

Decrease the LCD brightness

Use the Battery Power-Management function

Using Advanced Power Management

Note:

If you have purchased the computer with a preinstalled operating system, APM is already installed correctly.

The computer has power-management functions built in. No special power-management drivers have to be installed before you use the computer. However, the computer is able to conserve more power when APM is used.

APM allows you to reduce power consumption when your applications and devices are idle. Each operating system comes with its own APM.



If you are using OS/2, APM is automatically installed when the installation program detects that the power-management function is installed on your computer.



*If you are using DOS, APM is automatically installed when the installation program detects that the power-management function is installed on your computer. To verify that the computer has APM installed correctly, type **power** at the command prompt and press **Enter**. If a screen similar to the following appears, APM is successfully installed.*

Power Management Status

Setting = ADV: REG

CPU: idle 32% of time.

AC Line Status : OFFLINE

Battery status : High

If not, add the following line to your CONFIG.SYS file, using a text editor such as the DOS Editor.

DEVICE=C:\DOS\POWER.EXE

Maximizing Battery-Powered Operation



If you are using Windows, follow these instructions to check and install APM for Windows:

1. Start the system. Make sure that the current directory is Windows (usually C:\WINDOWS>).
2. Type SETUP at the command prompt and press **Enter**. The following screen appears.

```
Windows Setup
=====

If your computer or network appears on the Hardware Compatibility List
with an asterisk next to it, press F1 before continuing.

System Information
Computer:      MS-DOS System
Display:      Cyber932  8  x6  256 small font
Mouse:        Microsoft, or IBM PS/2
```

Note:

If "MS-DOS System with APM" appears for the item "Computer:", APM is already installed. Press F3 to exit the setup.

3. Using the Arrow keys (↑, ↓), position the highlighted cursor over **MS-DOS** System** and press **Enter**.
4. Position the highlighted cursor over **MS-DOS System with APM** and press **Enter**.
5. Verify that the item "Computer" has changed to **MS-DOS System with APM** on the screen. If not, return to step 3.

```
Windows Setup
=====

If your computer or network appears on the Hardware Compatibility List
with an asterisk next to it, press F1 before continuing.

System Information
Computer:      MS-DOS System with APM
Display:      Cyber932  8  x6  256 small font
Mouse:        Microsoft, or IBM PS/2
```

6. Press **Enter** to install APM.
7. Restart the system to make APM effective.

Decreasing LCD Brightness

Adjust the brightness control on the LCD to the lowest level possible that allows you to comfortably view the screen. This is an effective way of conserving battery power.

Using the Battery Power-Management Function

Note:

When you install an operating system, you must install the ThinkPad Features program using the Utility Diskette.

To install the ThinkPad Features program:

 Chapter 7.

Your computer has the following built-in battery power-saving functions to save power when you use the battery pack or AC Adapter:

Operation modes. The operation modes control the processor speed or set timers for saving power. For more information about the operation modes, see 2 on page 40.

Power-saving modes. The power-saving modes stop all tasks when the computer is not used for a specified time.

When resuming normal operation from one of the modes, use the **resume function** to return to where you were when you entered that mode. Because the operating system is already loaded, the resume function is faster than turning the power on.

The following are the three power-saving modes:

Standby Mode You can enter standby mode for short idle times, such as when you are having a short conversation.

Suspend Mode You can enter suspend mode for some what longer times when you are away from your computer.

Hibernation Mode

You can enter hibernation mode when you leave your office for the day.

It takes more time to return to normal operation from suspend mode than to return from standby mode, but the computer does not use as much power.

Standby Mode

In standby mode, the hard disk drive stops and the LCD turns off. All system tasks are interrupted when you enter standby mode. The computer immediately resumes normal operation when you press any key or use any pointing device. Also, if a power-saving monitor (Energy Star Monitor) is in use when the computer enters standby mode, the computer activates the monitor's low-power mode.

Suspend Modes

The computer provides the following two types of suspend modes for you to save power:

- Suspend mode
- RediSafe suspend mode

The following indicator lamps (visible when the LCD is closed) change status when using suspend mode:

Current Status	Indicator Lamps	
	 Suspend Mode	 Power-On
In Suspend Mode	Green	Off
Entering or Resuming Suspend	Blinking green	Off
Normal Operation	Off	Green

Suspend mode

In suspend mode, all tasks are stopped and stored in memory to save power. When the computer resumes normal operation, the tasks are automatically restored.

RediSafe suspend mode

In RediSafe suspend mode, all tasks are stopped, and memory data and the status of the computer are stored on the hard disk drive. This prevents accidental loss of data during suspend mode. Resuming normal operation is faster in RediSafe suspend mode than it is in Hibernation mode; the computer resumes normal operation by pressing the **Fn** key in RediSafe suspend mode.

Using Power Management

If all battery power is used and the computer turns off during RediSafe suspend mode, install a fully charged battery pack or connect the AC Adapter; then press the power switch to resume operation. All tasks are restored. *Create the hibernation file before using this mode.* (See "Creating the Hibernation File" on page 129.)

To enter RediSafe suspend mode, do the following:

If you are using OS/2 or Windows:

1. Start the ThinkPad Features program; then go to the ThinkPad view.
2. Click on the battery icon (); then click on the suspend/hibernation/resume options icon (.
3. If a hibernation file has not been created, click on **Enable hibernation and create the file on the hard disk drive.**
4. Click on the check box next to **RediSafe suspend.** (A mark appears in the check box when RediSafe suspend is selected.)
5. Click on the **OK** button.

If you are using DOS:

1. Type PS2 HFILE C at the command prompt; then press **Enter** to create the hibernation file on drive C (type the drive letter of your choice).
2. Type PS2 SA E at the command prompt; then press **Enter** to enable suspend mode.

Considerations for Suspend Mode

Consider the following before using suspend mode.

The computer can enter suspend mode when used with the following operating systems:

- DOS Version 7.0 or later
- OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later
- Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 with DOS Version 7.0 or later

Important

When you use Windows Version 3.11, ensure that Advanced Power Management (APM) is installed according to the instructions in “Installing Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 or Later” on page 233.

Approximately 1.5 hours are needed to recharge the battery in suspend mode.

Attached devices, such as a printer or serial device, stop running when the computer enters suspend mode. When you resume normal operation, the output might differ from what you expect, because the device might be reset or lose its configuration settings.

Sometimes you might want to use the computer with the LCD closed, for example, when an external display and keyboard are used. In such a case, turn on the computer with the LCD closed or set the computer to not enter suspend mode when the LCD is closed using the ThinkPad Features program.

When a power-on password or hard disk password is set, you need to enter your password to resume normal operation from the ThinkPad Features timer or ring indicator. However, no password prompt will be displayed; only a blank screen is displayed.

Using Power Management

Standby mode:

 Page 125.

When the computer is powered with ac power and is using one of the following IBM PC Cards, it enters *standby mode*:

- IBM 3270 Emulation Credit Card Adapter
- IBM Token-Ring 16/4 Credit Card Adapter
- IBM Credit Card Adapter for Ethernet
- IBM 5250 Emulation Credit Card Adapter

When other PC Cards are used and the computer enters suspend mode, all application programs stop. Communication also stops for communication PC Cards not listed above. For some PC Cards, power to the PC Cards might also turn off.

When the computer is powered with battery power, the computer turns power off to the PC Card, and communication stops for communication PC Cards, so the duration of suspend mode is longer.

If communication for a PC Card is not reestablished after resuming normal operation, remove and then reinstall the PC Card before restarting the system or application program. For other kinds of PC Cards, if the PC Card or computer does not operate, restart the application or computer.

Note:

You must set the **Ring Indicator** option in the ThinkPad Features program so the computer automatically resumes normal operation.

For OS/2 or Windows:

1. Click on the battery icon

() in the ThinkPad view.

2. Click on the suspend/hibernation/resume

option icon () ; then select the ring indicator option.

For DOS: Enter PS2 RI E

When the computer is using one of the following IBM modem cards and detects an incoming call while in suspend mode, the computer automatically resumes normal operation:

- IBM PCMCIA Data/FAX Modem
- IBM High Speed PCMCIA Data/FAX Modem
- SRAM or ATA PC Card
- IBM Microelectronics 2.4/9.6 Data/FAX Modem
- IBM Microelectronics 14.4/14.4 Data/FAX Modem
- IBM Wireless Modem for ARDIS
- IBM Wireless Modem for Mobitex
- IBM Wireless Modem for Cellular/CDPD

While a communication link is active, the computer does not enter suspend mode.

Hibernation Mode

Notes:

1. Before using hibernation mode, you must create a hibernation file.
2. Using an expansion unit or a particular PC Card can disable the hibernation mode.
3. With a base memory of 8MB, it takes approximately 10 seconds to enter hibernation mode and 18 seconds to resume normal operation. (The time to enter or exit hibernation mode depends on the computer memory size.)

In hibernation mode, all tasks are stopped and memory data and the current status of the computer are stored on the hard disk drive; *then power is turned off*. No battery power is used. When power is turned on again, the computer automatically restores the tasks and resumes normal operation. When the computer enters hibernation mode, you hear one short beep. A graphical message appears and the suspend mode indicator lamp blinks; then a short beep sounds again to inform you that the computer has entered hibernation mode.

Creating the Hibernation File

Warning:

The hibernation file must not be created in a compressed data area of the hard disk.

When installing an operating system or installing additional computer memory, you must create a hibernation file on the hard disk drive to use the hibernation mode. (You only need to create the hibernation file once after installing an operating system or additional memory.)

The size of the hibernation file will be greater than total memory. For example, if base memory is 8MB and you have installed an optional 4MB memory module (DIMM), the hibernation file is 13MB:

$$(8\text{MB} + 4\text{MB}) + 1\text{MB} = 13\text{MB}$$

The following describes how to create a hibernation file for your operating system.

Using Power Management



If you are using OS/2 or Windows:

1 Turn on the computer and start the ThinkPad Features program.

2 Go to the ThinkPad view; then click on the battery icon.



3 Click on the suspend/hibernation/resume options icon.



4 Click on the **Enable Hibernation** button in the menu.

5 Make sure the hard disk drive in the computer is selected; then press the **OK** button to create the hibernation file.

The computer can now enter hibernation mode.



If you are using DOS:

Type `PS2 HFILE C` at the command prompt; then press **Enter**.

The hibernation file is created on drive C.

Considerations for Hibernation Mode

Consider the following before using hibernation mode:

Do not run any tasks while the hibernation file is being created.

Create the hibernation file only on the hard disk drive installed in the computer. The hibernation file is hidden and cannot be accessed.

The computer uses battery power to enter hibernation mode. Therefore, it reserves some battery power when it is set to enter hibernation mode when a low-battery condition occurs. This can cause the battery operating time to be shorter than the time shown on page 25.

When you enter hibernation mode while playing music CDs or multisession Photo CDs, you will not return to where you left off after resuming normal operation.

Note:

If the communication links are still not reestablished, remove and then reinstall the PC Card before restarting the system or application program.

When the computer is powered with battery power, the computer turns power off to the PC Card when entering hibernation mode. When resuming normal operation, if the PC Card or computer does not operate, restart the application or computer.

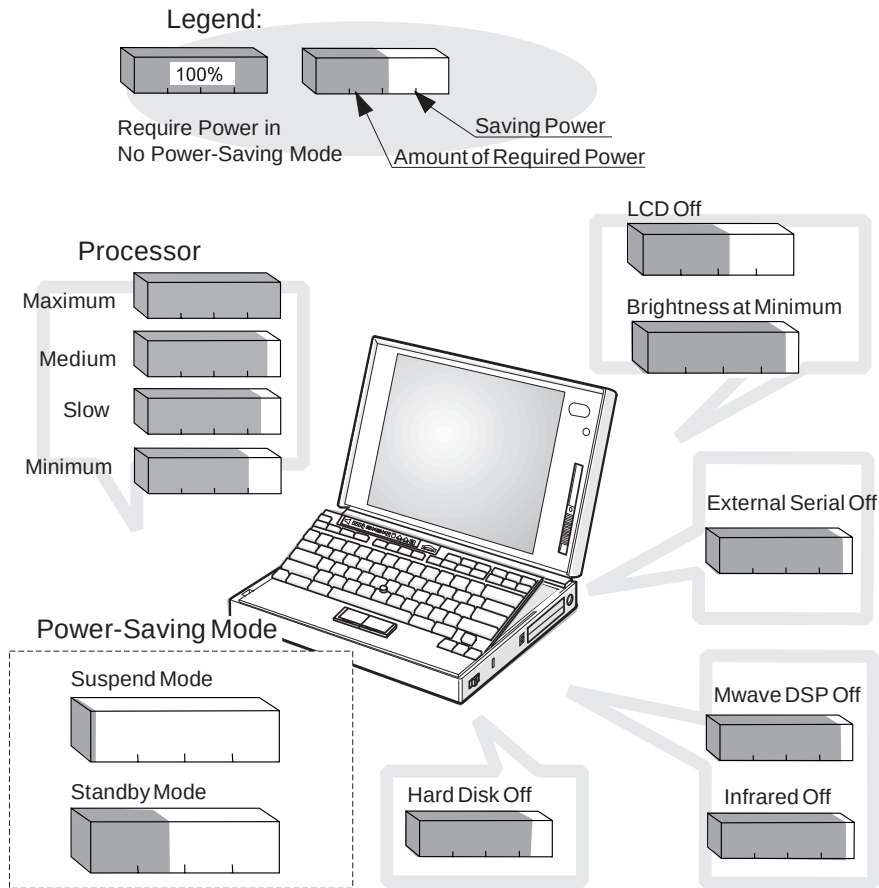
When the computer is powered with ac power and is using one of the following IBM PC Cards, it does not enter hibernation mode:

- IBM PCMCIA Data/FAX Modem
- IBM High Speed PCMCIA Data/FAX Modem
- IBM 3270 Emulation Credit Card Adapter
- IBM Token-Ring 16/4 Credit Card Adapter
- IBM Credit Card Adapter for Ethernet
- IBM 5250 Emulation Credit Card Adapter
- IBM Microelectronics 2.4/9.6 Data/FAX Modem
- IBM Microelectronics 14.4/14.4 Data/FAX Modem
- IBM Wireless Modem for ARDIS
- IBM Wireless Modem for Mobitex
- IBM Wireless Modem for Cellular/CDPD

This prevents possible problems from occurring with communication application programs after the computer returns to normal operation.

Using Power Management

The figure below helps you determine how much power is normally required for each computer feature, and how much is required when the feature is controlled by the battery power-management function.



Chapter 5. Protecting Your Computer

This chapter provides information about how to protect your computer and its internal devices.

Using Passwords	134
Power-On Password	134
Setting a Power-On Password	134
Entering a Power-On Password	136
Changing a Power-On Password	137
Removing a Power-On Password	138
Hard Disk Password	139
Setting a Hard Disk Password	140
Entering a Hard Disk Password	141
Changing a Hard Disk Password	142
Removing a Hard Disk Password	143
Supervisor Password	144
Setting a Supervisor Password	145
Entering a Supervisor Password	146
Changing a Supervisor Password	146
Removing a Supervisor Password	148
Using Several Hard Disk Drives with the Supervisor Password	149
Using the Personalization Feature	151
Entering the Personal Information	152
Deleting a Personalized Screen	154
Using Locks	155
Using the Security Lock	155
Using the PC Card Lock	157
Removing the PC Card Lock	159

Using Passwords

Using Passwords

There are three types of passwords you can use to protect your computer and the removable hard disk drive:

The *power-on password* protects your computer from being used by unauthorized persons.

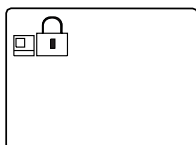
The *hard disk password* protects the data on your removable hard disk drive from being accessed by unauthorized persons.

The *supervisor password* protects the system information in Easy-Setup from being modified and your removable hard disk drive from being used by unauthorized persons.

Hints and Tips

You can display your personal information, such as your name or address, on the password prompt screen. For details, see page 151.

Power-On Password



The power-on password helps protect your computer from being used by unauthorized persons. If a power-on password is set, the password prompt (🔒) appears on the screen whenever you turn on the computer and reminds you to enter the password.

Setting a Power-On Password

To set a power-on password:

Note:

If **Initialize** in the Config menu, **Password**, or **Start up** cannot be selected when using Easy-Setup, a supervisor password is set. You must enter the supervisor password instead of the power-on password to use all Easy-Setup functions.

1 Start Easy-Setup and select the **Password** icon.

To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1** and turn on the computer.

2 Select the **Power-On** icon (🔒).

Note:

When you type a wrong key, use the **Backspace** key to erase it and then type the correct key.

3 Type your desired power-on password; then press **Enter**.

You can use any combination of up to 7 characters. Use a combination of any letters or numbers (A to Z, 0 to 9) in uppercase (A) or lowercase (a). Uppercase and lowercase letters (for example, A and a) are treated the same.

4 Type your power-on password again to verify it; then press **Enter**.**Do Not Forget Your Power-On Password!**

If you forget your power-on password, you cannot reset it. You have to take the computer to an IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative to have the password canceled. Proof of purchase is required, and an additional charge might be required for the service.

Once you set the password, you cannot change or remove it in Easy-Setup; you must change or remove a password at the password prompt screen that appears when you turn on the computer. See “Changing a Power-On Password” on page 137 or “Removing a Power-On Password” on page 138.

Using Passwords

Entering a Power-On Password

Note:

If the return to normal operation is caused by a preset timer or an incoming call through the modem, the password prompt does not appear. Type the correct password on the blank screen.

If a power-on password is set, the password prompt reminds you to enter the password when:

Turning on the computer.

Returning to normal operation from suspend mode.

When the password prompt appears at the top left corner on the screen, do the following:

1 Type your power-on password.

Each time you press a key, the symbol  appears.

When typing your password, release each key quickly. If you hold a key down too long, the same letter can be entered repeatedly.

2 Press the **Enter** key.

*When the password is entered correctly, **OK** appears and the computer starts normal operation.*

*When you enter the password incorrectly, **X** appears. Enter the correct password.*

If you fail to enter the correct password after three tries, you must turn the computer off, wait at least 5 seconds, and turn it on to try again.

Changing a Power-On Password

You must change your power-on password at the password prompt screen that appears when you turn on the computer. You cannot change it after normal operation is resumed. To change a power-on password:

Important

Do *not* press **Enter** until you have finished all the steps to change the power-on password.

- 1** Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.
- 2** When the password prompt () appears, type your *current* power-on password; then press the **Spacebar**.
- 3** Type the *new* password; then press the **Spacebar**.
Use no more than 7 characters.
- 4** Type the *new* password again to verify it; then press **Enter**.

All the steps can be summarized as follows:

Current(space)New(space)New(Enter)

The new password will be available when you turn on the computer the next time.

Do Not Forget Your Power-On Password!

If you forget your power-on password, you cannot reset it. You have to take the computer to an IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative to have the password canceled. Proof of purchase is required, and an additional charge might be required for the service.

Using Passwords

Removing a Power-On Password

You must remove your power-on password at the password prompt that appears when you turn on the computer. You cannot remove it after normal operation is resumed. To remove a power-on password:

1 Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.

2 When the password prompt (🔒) appears, type your current password; then press the **Spacebar**.

3 Press **Enter**.

The power-on password is removed.

All the steps can be summarized as follows:

Current(space)(Enter)

Hard Disk Password



The hard disk password helps you protect the information stored on your removable hard disk drive. Even if your hard disk was removed from the computer, the information stored in your hard disk cannot be accessed without the hard disk password.

Note:

The hard disk password is stored on the hard disk drive when you set the hard disk password, while the power-on password is stored in the nonvolatile memory of the computer.

When you turn on the computer, the hard disk password prompt appears on the screen and reminds you to enter your password.

When you use a secondary hard disk drive in the UltraBay, you can set hard disk passwords for each of the hard disk drives installed.

The password prompt  appears on the screen when you turn on the computer and reminds you to enter the main hard disk password;  reminds you to enter the secondary hard disk password.

When a hard disk password is set, a preset timer or an incoming call do not activate the resume function.

Note:

If the return to normal operation is caused by a preset timer or an incoming call through the modem, the password prompt does not appear. Type the correct password on the blank screen.

To use the resume function with a hard disk password, set the same password for both the power-on password and the hard disk password.

Note**Using a Hard Disk Password with a Power-On Password:**

You can use the hard disk password with the power-on password at the same time. When you turn on the computer, the power-on password prompt appears first and then the hard disk password prompt appears on the screen. Enter the correct passwords.

When you set the same hard disk password as the power-on password, only the power-on password prompt appears on the screen. Enter the correct password. The hard disk password screen does not appear.

Using Passwords

Setting a Hard Disk Password

Note:

If **Initialize** in the Config menu, **Password**, or **Start up** functions cannot be selected when using Easy-Setup, the supervisor password is set. You must enter the supervisor password instead of the power-on password to use all Easy-Setup functions.

Note:

HDD-1 represents a main hard disk password and **HDD-2** represents a secondary hard disk password.

Note:

When you type a wrong key, use the **Backspace** key to erase it, and then type the correct key.

To set a hard disk password:

1 Start Easy-Setup; then select the **Password** icon.

To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1** and turn on the computer.

2 Select **HDD-1** (HDD1) or **HDD-2** (HDD2) according to the hard disk type you want to set.

3 Type your desired hard disk password; then press **Enter**.

You can use any combination of up to 7 characters. Use a combination of any letters or numbers (A to Z, 0 to 9) in uppercase (A) or lowercase (a). Uppercase and lowercase letters (for example, A and a) are treated the same.

4 Type your hard disk password again to verify it; then press **Enter**.

Do Not Forget Your Hard Disk Password!

Note the password and keep it in a safe place.

If you forget your hard disk password, there is ***no way to reset your password or recover data from the hard disk***. Neither an IBM authorized reseller nor IBM marketing representative can make the hard disk drive usable.

Once you set the password, you cannot change or remove it in Easy-Setup; you must change or remove a password at the password prompt screen that appears when you turn on the computer. See "Changing a Hard Disk Password" on page 142 or "Removing a Hard Disk Password" on page 143.

Entering a Hard Disk Password

If a hard disk password is set, the hard disk password prompt appears when:

You turn on the computer.

When the computer returns to normal operation from suspend or hibernation mode.

When the password prompt appears at the top left corner on the screen:

Note:

Do *not* press the **Spacebar** after you enter the password; this action removes the password.

1 Type the hard disk password.

Each time you press a key, the symbol appears.

When typing your password, release each key quickly. If you hold a key down too long, the same letter can be entered repeatedly.

2 Press **Enter**.

*When the password is entered correctly, **OK** appears and the computer starts normal operation.*

*When you enter the password incorrectly, **X** appears. Enter the correct password.*

If you fail to enter the correct password after three tries, you must turn the computer off, wait at least 5 seconds, and turn it on to try again.

Using Passwords

Changing a Hard Disk Password

The procedure to change a hard disk password depends on whether or not it is set to the same password as the power-on password.

When the hard disk password is set the same as the power-on password:

- 1** Remove the passwords by following the steps in "Removing a Power-On Password" on page 138.

This operation removes both the hard disk password and the power-on password.

- 2** In Easy-Setup, set a new hard disk password. See the steps on page 140.

- 3** If you need a power-on password, set it in Easy-Setup.

When the hard disk password and the power-on password are different, or the power-on password has not been set:

- 1** Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.
- 2** If you have set a power-on password, type it; then press **Enter**.
- 3** When the hard disk password prompt (🔒) appears, type your *current* hard disk password; then press the **Spacebar**.
- 4** Type the *new* password; then press the **Spacebar**.
Use no more than 7 characters.
- 5** Type the *new* password again to verify it; then press **Enter**.

All the steps can be summarized as follows:

Current(space)New(space)New(Enter)

Do Not Forget Your Hard Disk Password!

Note the password and keep it in a safe place.

If you forget your hard disk password, there is ***no way to reset your password or recover data in the hard disk drive.***

Neither an IBM authorized reseller nor IBM marketing representative can make the hard disk drive usable.

Removing a Hard Disk Password

The procedure to remove a hard disk password depends on whether or not it is set to the same password as the power-on password.

When the hard disk password is set the same as the power-on password:

- 1** Remove the password by following the steps in "Removing a Power-On Password" on page 138.

This operation removes both the hard disk password and the power-on password.

- 2** If you need a power-on password, reset it in Easy-Setup.

When the hard disk password and the power-on password are different, or a power-on password has not been set:

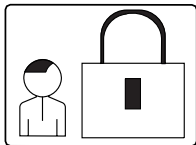
- 1** Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.
- 2** If you have set the power-on password, type it; then press **Enter**.
- 3** When the hard disk password prompt (🔒) appears, type your current password; then press the **Spacebar**.
- 4** Press **Enter**.

These steps can be summarized as follows:

Current(space)(Enter)

Using Passwords

Supervisor Password



The supervisor password helps you protect classified information. A supervisor password:

- Secures the system information stored in Easy-Setup.

- Prohibits modification to the hardware.

- Stops the computer after a POST error to restrict access to the system information.

- Overrides the power-on password. (The supervisor password has priority over the power-on password.)

Note:

The supervisor password has priority over the power-on password. You can start the computer with the supervisor password even if you do not know the power-on password.

If a supervisor password is set, you are prompted with a **power-on** icon (🔒) to enter the supervisor password when entering the Easy-Setup program and when a POST error occurs. You can start all normal operations for the computer except Easy-Setup without the supervisor password.

Using Both Supervisor and Hard Disk Passwords

When a supervisor password is set, the same password is automatically set for the hard disk password.

When you change or remove the supervisor password, the hard disk password also is changed or removed.

Setting a Supervisor Password

To set a supervisor password:

- 1** Start Easy-Setup; then select the **Password** icon.

To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1** and turn on the computer.

- 2** Select the **Supervisor** icon (🔒).

- 3** Type your desired supervisor password; then press **Enter**.

You can use any combination of up to 7 characters. Use a combination of any letters or numbers (A to Z, 0 to 9) in uppercase (A) or lowercase (a). Uppercase and lowercase letters (for example, A and a) are treated the same.

- 4** Type your supervisor password again to verify it; then press **Enter**.

Do Not Forget Your Supervisor Password!

Note the password and keep it in a safe place.

If you forget your supervisor password, there is ***no way to reset your password or recover data from the hard disk***. You have to take the computer to an IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative to have the system board replaced. Proof of purchase is required, and an additional charge might be required for the service. Neither an IBM authorized reseller nor IBM marketing representative can make the hard disk drive usable.

If you are using more than one hard disk drive, see page 149.

Using Passwords

Entering a Supervisor Password

To set your supervisor password:

1 Type your supervisor password.

Each time you press a key, the symbol  appears.

When typing your password, release each key quickly. If you hold a key down too long, the same letter can be entered repeatedly.

2 Press **Enter**.

*When the password is entered correctly, **OK** appears.*

*When you enter the password incorrectly, **X** appears.*
Enter the correct password.

If you fail to enter the correct password after three tries, you must turn the computer off, wait at least 5 seconds, and turn it on to try again.

Changing a Supervisor Password

To change your supervisor password:

1 Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.

2 Start Easy-Setup.

To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1** and turn on the computer.

3 Type your *current* supervisor password at the power-on prompt (); then press **Enter**.

4 Select the **Password** icon from the *Easy-Setup* menu.

5 Select the **Supervisor** icon; then type your *current* supervisor password and press the **Spacebar**.

A window appears so you can enter a new password.

6 Type the *new* password; then press **Enter**.

7 Type the *new* password again for verification; then press **Enter**.

Do Not Forget Your Supervisor Password!

Note the password and keep it in a safe place.

If you forget your supervisor password, you have to take the computer to an IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative to have the system board replaced. Proof of purchase is required, and an additional charge might be required for the service.

If you forget your supervisor password, there is ***no way to reset your password or recover data from the hard disk***. Neither an IBM authorized reseller nor IBM marketing representative can make the hard disk drive usable.

If you are using more than one hard disk drive, see page 150.

Using Passwords

Removing a Supervisor Password

To remove the supervisor password:

- 1** Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on.
- 2** Start Easy-Setup.
To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1** and turn on the computer.
- 3** When the power-on prompt (🔒) appears, type your current supervisor password; then press **Enter**.
- 4** Select the **Password** icon from the *Easy-Setup* menu.
- 5** Select the **Supervisor** icon; then type your current password and press the **Spacebar**.
- 6** Press **Enter** at the blank box.
- 7** Press **Enter** again at the verification screen.

When the supervisor password is removed, the lock in the **Supervisor** icon is unlocked (🔓) and you can select the **HDD-1** or **HDD-2** icon.

If you are using more than one hard disk drive, see page 150.

Using Several Hard Disk Drives with the Supervisor Password

Because the supervisor password automatically sets a hard disk password, you must set a supervisor password for each hard disk drive you are using.

To change or remove a supervisor password when you are using several hard disk drives, you must change or remove the hard disk password for each hard disk drive.

Setting a Supervisor Password when Using Several Hard Disk Drives

To set a supervisor password when using more than one hard disk drive on your computer:

To set a supervisor password:

 Page 145.

To install the hard disk drive:

 Page 173.

- 1** Set a supervisor password on your computer.
- 2** Install the hard disk drive in which you want to set the supervisor password.
- 3** Turn on the computer. A 158 error appears.
- 4** Press **Enter**.
- 5** Type your supervisor password at the power-on password prompt and start Easy-Setup.
- 6** Select the **Password** icon.
- 7** Select the **Supervisor** icon; then press **Enter**.
The supervisor password sets the hard disk password on the hard disk drive.
- 8** Turn off the computer. Repeat steps 2 through 8 to set the supervisor password for each hard disk drive.

Using Passwords

Changing or Removing the Supervisor Password when Using Several Hard Disk Drives

To change or remove the supervisor password when using more than one hard disk drive on your computer:

To change the supervisor password:

 Page 146.

To remove the supervisor password:

 Page 148.

To install the hard disk password:

 Page 173.

1 Change or remove your supervisor password on your computer.

2 Install the hard disk drive with the old supervisor password set.

3 Turn on the computer. The hard disk password prompt appears.

4 Do one of the following:

*If you removed the supervisor password in step 1, type the old supervisor password; then press the **Spacebar**.*

If you changed the supervisor password in step 1, change the old password on the hard disk drive to the new supervisor password by typing:

old(space)new(space)new

5 Press **Enter**.

6 Turn off the computer. Repeat steps 2 through 5 to change or remove the supervisor password for each hard disk drive.

Using the Personalization Feature



To set password:



Page 134.

You can display personal information, such as your name or address, every time the computer is turned on and a power-on or hard disk password is set. This can help you when you misplace your computer. Because the password is set, your data is secured and cannot be accessed, but your personal information is displayed and identifies the owner of the computer.

The personalization feature includes a personalization editor program to create your own image to be displayed with the text information you create, and a personalization update utility to store your personal data in the nonvolatile memory of your system.

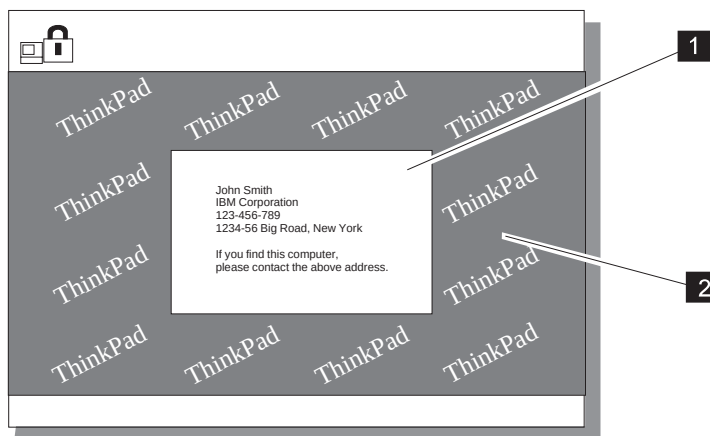
Note:

For details about bitmap graphics, see page 341.

A personalized password-prompt screen consists of two parts: the personal data area and the background bitmap area.

The *personal data area* 1 is the box in the center of the screen that has a black-and-white bitmap.

The *background bitmap area* 2 surrounds the personal data area.



Using the Personalization Feature

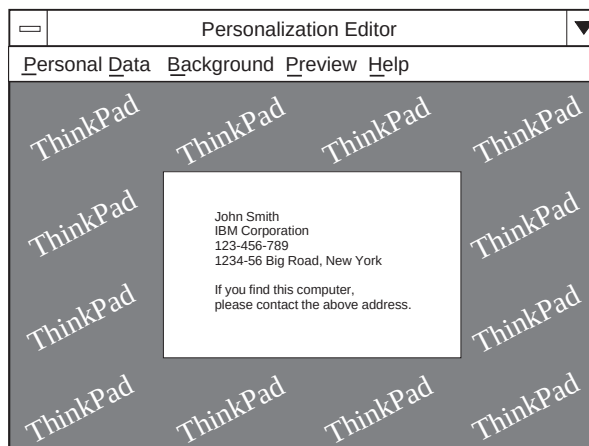
Entering the Personal Information

To enter personal information for the password-prompt screen:



- 1** Turn on the computer and start OS/2 or Windows.
- 2** Make a backup copy of Utility Diskette 2 using your operating system's diskcopy command.
- 3** Insert the backup copy of the Utility Diskette 2 into the diskette drive.
- 4** Start the ThinkPad Features program by double-clicking the **ThinkPad** icon on the screen.
- 5** Click on the **Personalization Editor** () icon.

The personalization editor window appears.



- 6** Select **Personal Data**.

Notes:

Use the **TAB** key to move the cursor to the next field.

You can change the color of the text background from black to white using the **Black background** option.

Note:

A sample bitmap file (BACKSAMP.BMP) is available on Utility Diskette 2.

7 Fill in each field with your own information at the Personal Data Entry window.

8 Select **OK**.

Next, create the background bitmap as follows:

9 Select **Background** in the Personalization Editor window.

Windows Paintbrush automatically opens.

10 Draw an image or color the background.

Your bitmap size must be *160 by 100 pels*. To change the size, select **Options** and then **Image Attributes**. Specify a **Width** of 160, a **Height** of 100, and set the **Units** to pels.

11 Select **File** and **Save As** to save and name your drawing as a *16-color bitmap* file on the backup copy of Utility Diskette 2.

12 Close Paintbrush.

13 When the opening file window appears, enter the name of your bitmap file on Utility Diskette 2 that you have just created.

14 Select **Preview** to preview the actual full-screen size of the personal information screen.

To return to the previous screen, press **Enter**.

To save your personalized screen in the nonvolatile memory in the computer:

15 Close all applications; then turn off the computer.

16 Insert the backup copy of the Utility Diskette 2 into the diskette drive; then turn on the computer.

Using the Personalization Feature

- 17** Select **Update personalization data** at the menu screen; then follow the instructions on the screen.

Your data will be copied from Utility Diskette 2 and stored in the nonvolatile memory in the computer.

- 18** After the data is stored, turn off the computer.

- 19** Set your password if you have not set it.

To set password:

 Page 134.

You have created your own personalized password-prompt screen. It will appear each time the computer is turned on.

Deleting a Personalized Screen

To delete a personalized screen from the password-prompt screen:

- 1** Close all applications; then turn off the computer.
- 2** Insert the backup copy of the Utility Diskette 2 into the diskette drive; then turn on the computer.
- 3** Select **Delete personalization data** from the menu; then follow the instructions on the screen.
- 4** After the data is updated, turn off the computer.

Your data has been deleted from the nonvolatile memory in the computer.

Using Locks

Note:

You are responsible for evaluating, selecting, and implementing the locking devices and security features. IBM makes no comments, judgments, or warranties about the function, quality or performance of locking devices and security features.

You can protect your computer and its internal devices with locks.

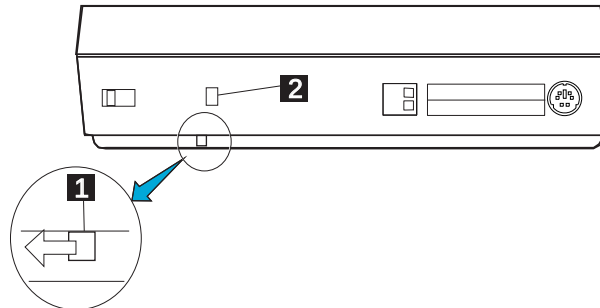
To protect the internal devices under the keyboard and prevent the removal of your computer, you can purchase a Kensington lock or a compatible lock.

To protect PC Cards, you can use a PC Card lock.

Using the Security Lock

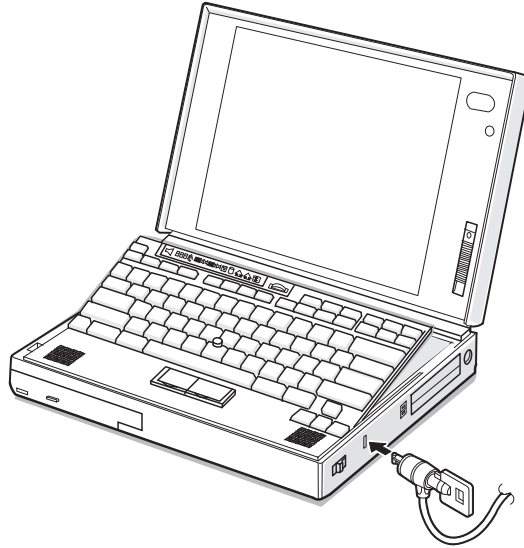
To prevent your computer and its internal devices from being removed without permission, purchase a Kensington lock or a compatible lock and do the following:

- 1** Lock the latch **1** on the right side of the computer to open the keyhole **2**.



Using Locks

- 2** Attach a Kensington lock or a compatible lock to the keyhole on the side of the computer; then secure the chain on the lock to a secure stationary object.



This also prevents the removal of:

Internal devices under the keyboard

Memory modules (DIMMs) in the memory slot on the bottom of the computer.

Using the PC Card Lock

To prevent PC Cards from being removed from the PCMCIA slots:

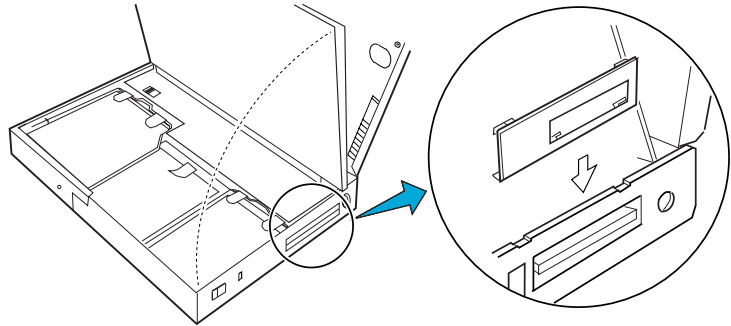
Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

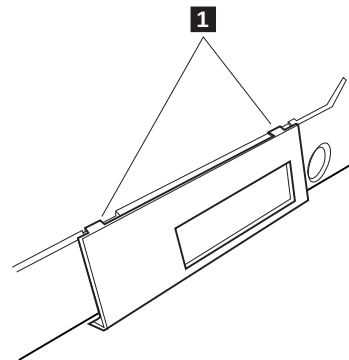
Warning:

The hard disk drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. If it falls onto a hard surface, severe damage can occur.

- 1** Open the keyboard and remove the hard disk drive; then position the PC Card lock as shown.

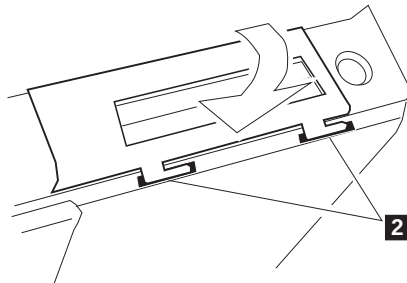


- 2** Fit the upper portion of the PC Card lock into the two notches **1** as shown.

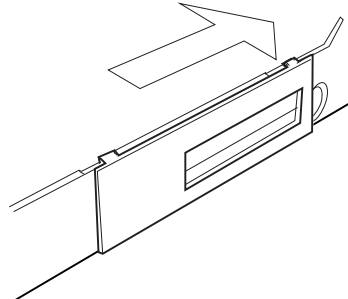


Using Locks

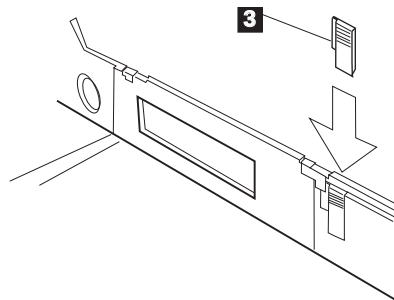
- 3** Insert the lower portion of the PC Card lock into the openings **2** on the bottom edge of the computer.



- 4** Slide the PC Card lock to the right.



- 5** Insert the spacer **3** from the inner side of the computer as shown to stop the PC Card lock from sliding.



To use the security keyhole:



Page 155.

- 6** Replace the hard disk drive and lock the keyboard using the security keyhole.

Removing the PC Card Lock

To remove the PC Card lock:

Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

Warning:

The hard disk drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. If it falls onto a hard surface, severe damage can occur.

- 1** Open the keyboard and remove the hard disk drive.
- 2** Remove the spacer from the computer.
- 3** Slide the PC Card lock toward the front of the computer.
- 4** Remove the PC Card lock first from the lower portion and then from the upper portion.

Be sure to save the PC Card lock for future use.



Using Locks



Chapter 6. Installing and Removing Options

This chapter provides information about how to install or remove external or internal devices and IBM options.

Installing and Removing PC Cards	162
Inserting the PC Card	163
Removing the PC Card	165
Increasing Memory Capacity	166
Installing and Removing the DIMM	166
Replacing the Hard Disk Drive	173
Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay	176
Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay	180
Installing an Option in the UltraBay	184
Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit	187
Attaching an External Numeric Keypad or a Mouse	191
Using the Mouse and Other Pointing Devices	192
Attaching an External Keyboard	193
Attaching an External Display	194
Changing the Display Mode	195
Setting the Monitor Type and the Display Driver	196
Connecting an External Display to the Computer	197
Changing the Screen Resolution or Color Depth	197
Attaching an IBM Dock I or Dock II Expansion Unit	199

Installing and Removing PC Cards

Installing and Removing PC Cards

This section explains how to install and remove a PC Card. For information about operating the computer with PC Cards, refer to “Using PC Cards” on page 53.

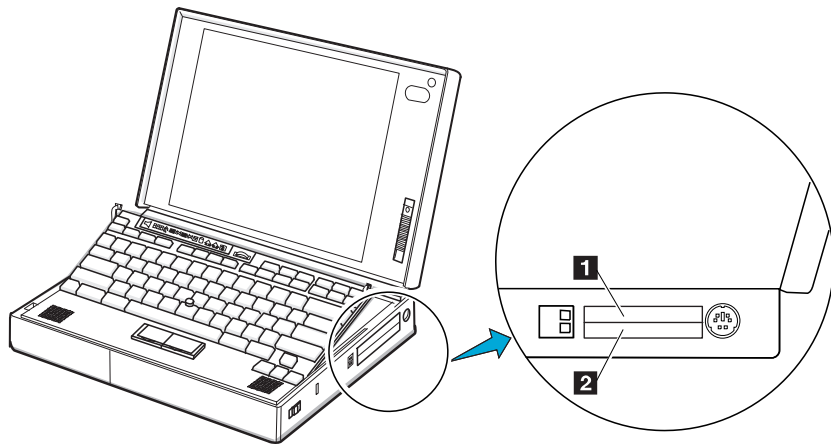
Note:

When installing an operating system, install the PCMCIA device driver that is on the PCMCIA Device Driver Diskette for DOS/Windows before using PC Cards.

The computer has two PCMCIA slots (upper slot 1 and lower slot 2), and you can install two *Type I* or *Type II* PC Cards (one in each slot), or a single *Type III* PC Card (in the lower slot).

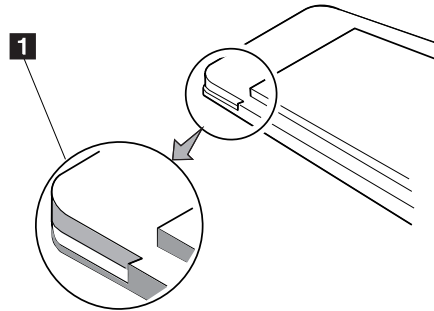
To install the PCMCIA device driver:

 Page 203.



Inserting the PC Card

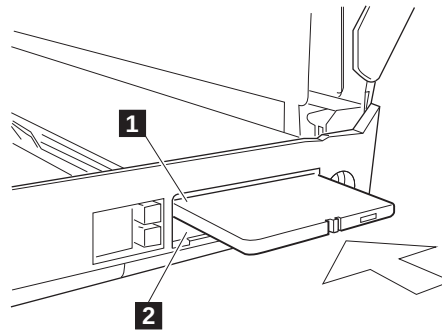
1 Find the notched edge **1** of the PC Card as shown.



2 Insert the PC Card into an appropriate slot according to your PC Card type. Slot covers open to the inside when you insert the PC Card.

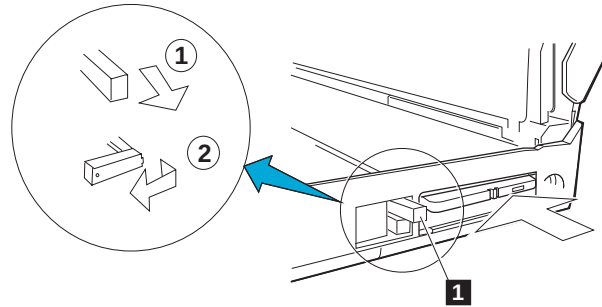
If you are using a Type I or Type II PC Card, insert it into either the upper slot **1** or the lower slot **2**.

If you are using a Type III PC Card, insert the card into the *lower* slot **2**.



Installing and Removing PC Cards

- 3** Press the PC Card firmly into the connector until the eject button **1** pops out. Then, pull the eject button out slightly and fold it to the left.



You have completed the installation of the PC Card. Refer to the following sections:

To use PC Cards, see “Using PC Cards” on page 53.

To use PC Cards with power-saving functions, see:

- “Considerations for Suspend Mode” on page 127.
- “Considerations for Hibernation Mode” on page 131.

To secure your PC Card with a lock, see “Using the PC Card Lock” on page 157.

Removing the PC Card

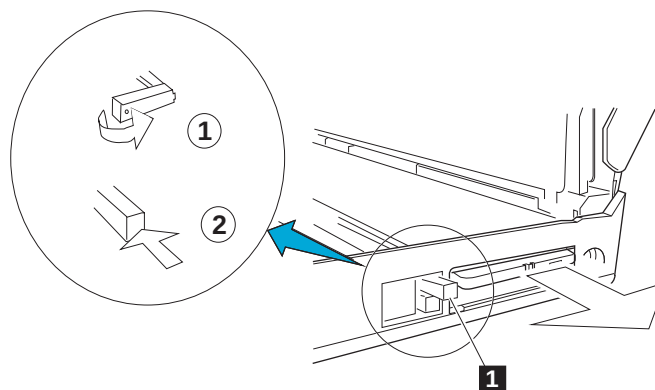
Warning:

Make sure the PC Card lock is removed.

To remove PC Card lock:

 Page 158.

Raise the PC Card eject button 1 for the PC Card you want to remove. Then, press the PC Card eject button and remove the PC Card.



Increasing Memory Capacity

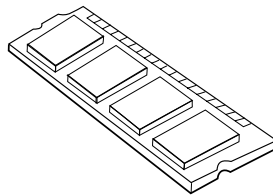
Increasing Memory Capacity

Note:

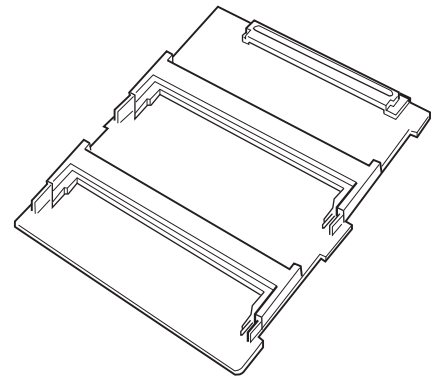
IC DRAM cards cannot be used with the 760CD computer.

Increasing memory capacity is an effective way to make programs run faster. You can increase the amount of memory in your computer by installing dual inline memory modules (*DIMMs*), available as an option.

DIMM



DIMM adapter



Three different capacities of DIMM (4MB, 8MB, and 16MB) are available. To use a DIMM, you need to install it on the memory module adapter (DIMM adapter) in the memory slot on the bottom of the computer. The DIMM adapter has two sockets for DIMM expansion. The memory capacity can be expanded up to 40MB when you install two 16MB DIMMs in addition to the standard memory (8MB).

Installing and Removing the DIMM

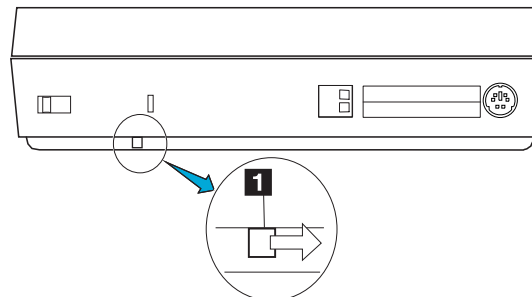
Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

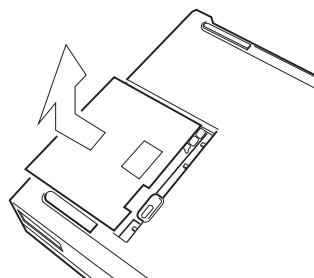
- 1** Turn off the computer; then disconnect the AC Adapter and all cables from the computer.
- 2** If you are using any locking device with a security keyhole, remove it.

Increasing Memory Capacity

- 3** Unlock the latch 1 on the right side of the computer.

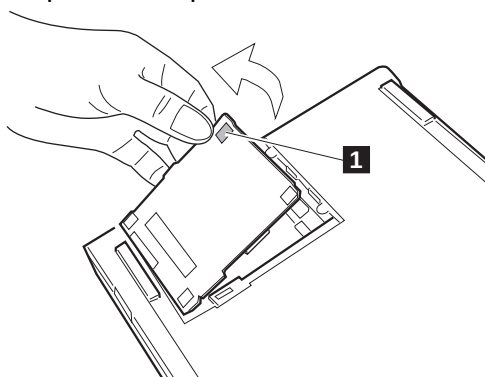


- 4** Turn over the computer; then slide the memory slot cover 1 and remove it.



Warning:
To avoid damaging the DIMM, do not touch its contact edge.

- 5** Remove the DIMM adapter by lifting up the edge 1 from the computer, and place it on a flat surface.



Increasing Memory Capacity

6 Which are you going to do?

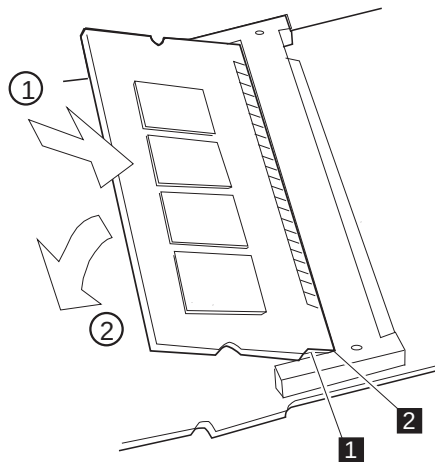
Install a DIMM Go to the next step.

Remove a DIMM Go to step 9 on page 169.

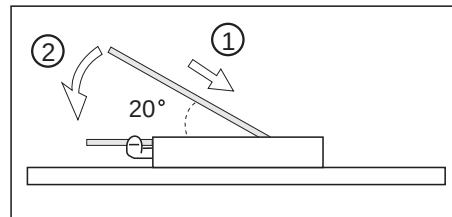
7 Insert the DIMM (available as an option) into either of the sockets on the DIMM adapter.

- Find the notch 1 on the side of the DIMM.
- With the notched end of the DIMM toward the right side of the socket 2, insert the DIMM, at an angle of approximately 20°, into the socket; then press it firmly.
- Pivot the DIMM until it snaps into place.

If you have another DIMM to install, insert it into the other socket in the same way.



Side View

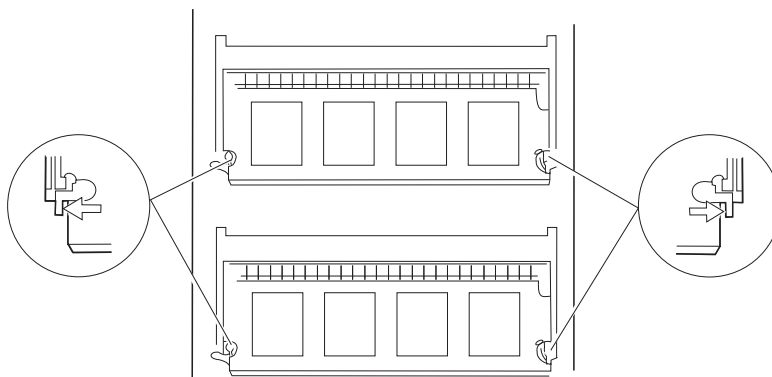


Warning:

To avoid damaging the DIMM, do not touch its contact edge.

8 Go to step 10 on page 169.

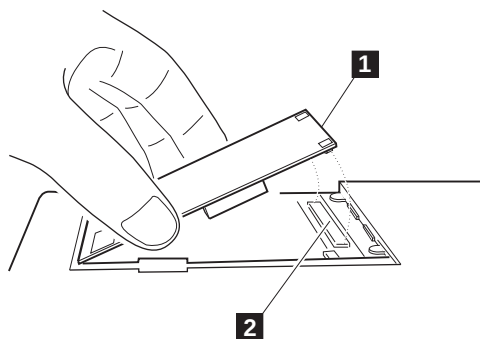
9 Press out on the latches on both edges of the socket at the same time and remove the DIMM.



Be sure to save the DIMM for future use.

10 Attach the DIMM adapter to the computer.

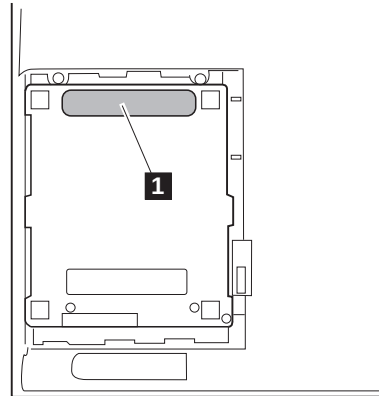
- a) Turn over the DIMM adapter.
- b) Place it into the memory slot and then align the connectors of the DIMM adapter 1 and the memory slot 2.



Increasing Memory Capacity

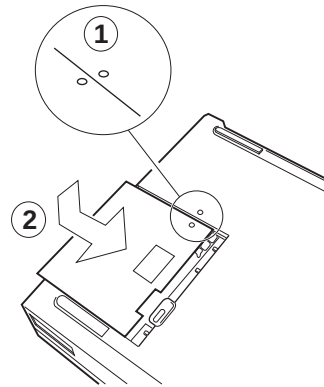
- c) Press on the shaded area **1** until the DIMM adapter snaps into the memory slot connector.

Press on three points (both sides and center) of the shaded area.



- d) Make sure the DIMM adapter is firmly connected.

- 11** Align the matching () marks on the memory slot cover and the bottom of the computer; then slide in the memory slot cover.



12 To confirm that the DIMM adapter is correctly attached to the computer, do the following:

- a) Calculate your total memory size by adding the DIMM memory size to the base memory size (7808KB).

For example, if you installed two 16MB DIMMs, the total memory size can be calculated as follows:

$$16(\text{MB}) \times 2 \times 1024(\text{KB}) + 7808(\text{KB}) = 4576(\text{KB})$$

Note:

To start Easy-Setup, press and hold **F1**; then turn on the computer.

- b) Start Easy-Setup and confirm the memory size count at the upper left corner of the screen as shown:

4 576 KB OK

If a 2 1 error code appears under the memory count, turn off the computer and go to page 166 to reinstall the DIMM.

78 8 KB OK

2 1

- c) Is the total memory size the same as the value you calculated in step 12a?

Yes Go to the next step.

No Turn off the computer and go to page 166 to reinstall the DIMM.

Increasing Memory Capacity

Note:

It may take some time to complete the memory test.

- d) Select **Test** from the main menu of Easy-Setup; then select **Memory**.

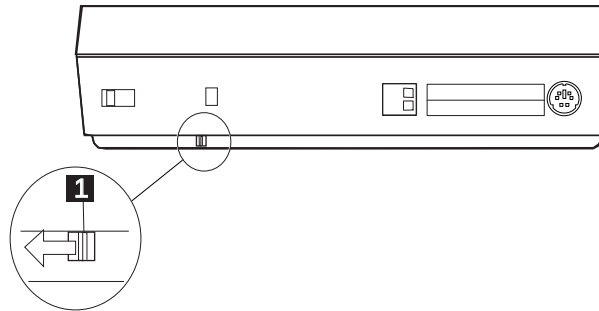
The memory test starts.

- e) Does an OK message now appear under the **Memory** icon?

Yes You have installed the DIMM and DIMM adapter correctly. Exit Easy-Setup and go to next step.

No You need to reinstall the DIMM adapter. Go to page 166 and reinstall the DIMM adapter.

- 13** Slide the latch 1 to lock the memory slot cover.



To prevent the installed DIMMs from being removed from the computer, attach a lock to the security keyhole. See page 155.

- 14** Close the keyboard and reconnect all cables.

You have completed the installation or removal of the DIMM.

Note:

If you changed the memory installed in the computer, you need to create a new hibernation file.

If you plan to use hibernation mode, see “Creating the Hibernation File” on page 129.

Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

The capacity of the hard disk can be increased by replacing the original hard disk drive with an optional one. This option can be purchased through your IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative.

Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

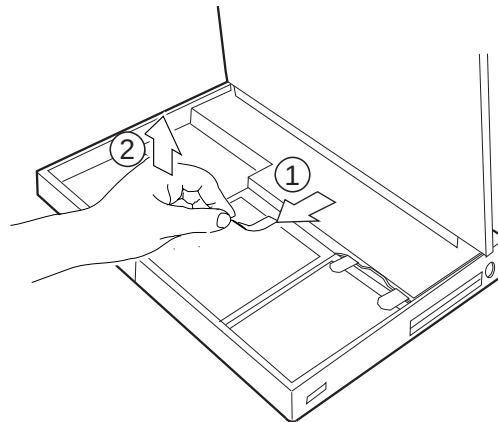
Warning:

The hard disk drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. If it falls onto a hard surface, severe damage can occur.

1 Turn off the computer; then disconnect the AC Adapter and all cables from the computer.

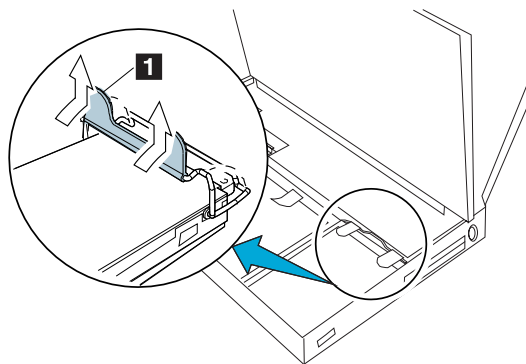
2 Open the LCD; then open the keyboard.

3 Remove the battery pack.



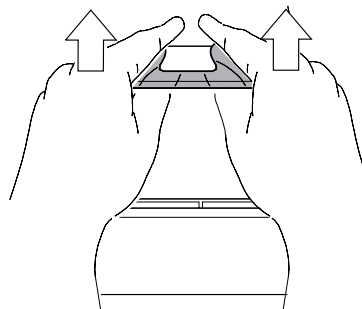
Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

- 4** Lift the hard disk drive handle by pulling the plastic tape **1**.



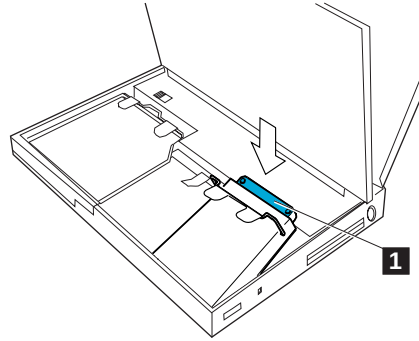
- 5** Remove the hard disk drive.

Be careful to hold the drive as it comes out of the bay. Gently place it on a flat surface. After removing the drive, keep it in the carrying case that contained the replacement drive.



Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

- 6** Insert the replacement drive. Press on the shaded area **1** as shown until the drive snaps into the connector and then replace the hard disk drive handle.



- 7** Replace the battery pack and then close the keyboard.

- 8** Connect the AC Adapter to the computer; then turn on the computer.

You have completed the replacement of the hard disk drive. To install your operating system and other necessary software, see "What You Need for Your Computer" on page 202.

Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay

Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay

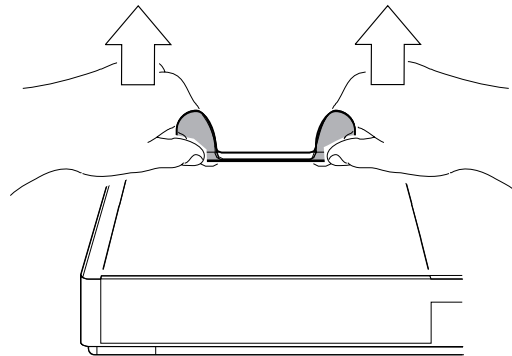
You can extend battery operation time by using two battery packs installed in the computer at the same time. A secondary battery pack is available as an option. Before installing a secondary battery pack, remove the CD-ROM drive from the UltraBay.

Warning:

To prevent damage to the CD-ROM drive, make sure the AC Adapter is disconnected from the computer.

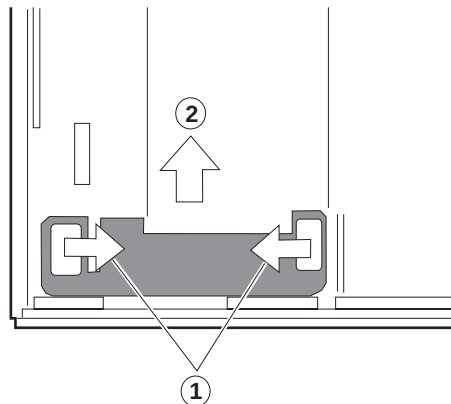
The CD-ROM drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. Do not press on, drop, or apply any shock to the CD-ROM drive while it is removed from the computer.

- 1** Stop any running applications; then make sure the CD-ROM tray is closed.
- 2** Turn off the computer; then disconnect the AC Adapter and all cables from the computer.
- 3** Open the LCD; then open the keyboard.
- 4** Lift the drive handle with the plastic tape, and remove the CD-ROM drive.



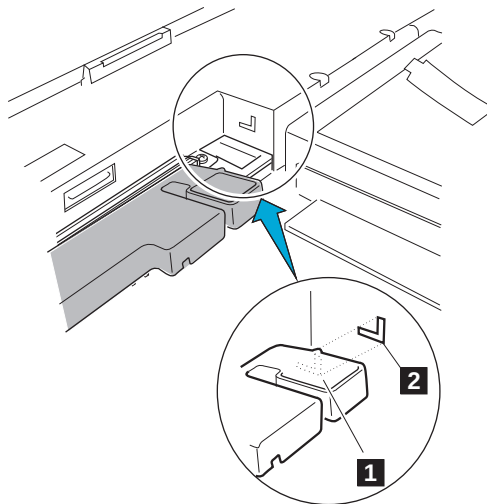
Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay

- 5** Pinch together both holes and remove the spacer by lifting it up slightly.



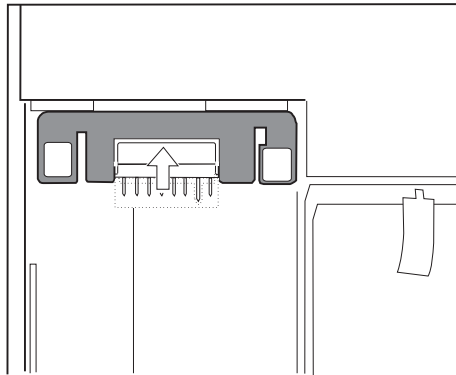
- 6** Place the spacer to cover the CD-ROM drive connector.

a) Make sure the projected end 1 fits into the opening 2.



Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay

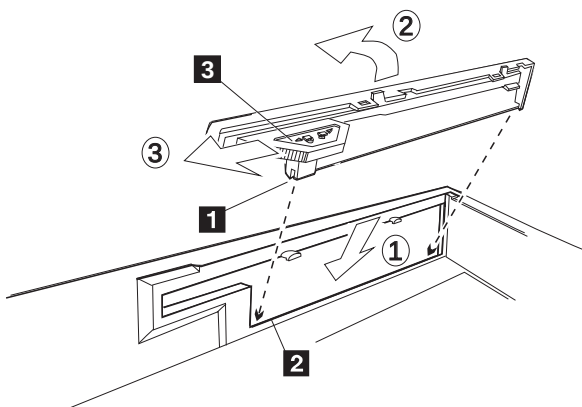
- b) Place the spacer onto the connector and then open the battery connector cover.



7 Install the blank front bezel from the *inner* side of the computer.

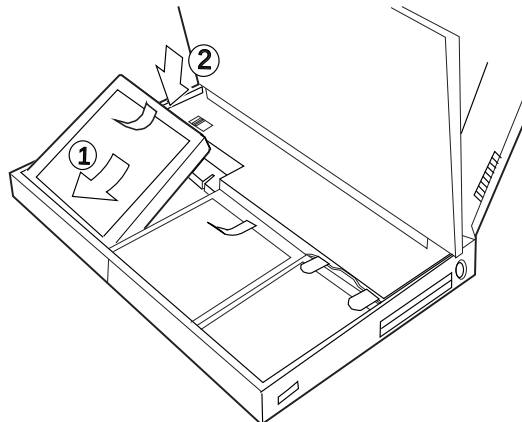
- a) Fit notch 1 on the lower portion of the bezel into the catch at the bottom of the drive bezel slot 2.
- b) Push the upper portion of the bezel into the slot until it snaps into place.
- c) Slide the lever 3 on the bezel to the left as shown.

The following figure shows the installation as seen from the inner side of the computer.



Installing a Secondary Battery Pack in the UltraBay

8 Insert the secondary battery pack into the UltraBay.



9 Close the keyboard and reconnect all cables.

You have completed the installation of the secondary battery pack. To use the secondary battery pack, see page 112.

When Replacing the CD-ROM Drive

Before you replace the CD-ROM drive in the UltraBay:

- 1.** Cover the battery connector with its cover.
- 2.** Move the spacer back to its original position (shown in step 5 on page 177).

Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay

Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay

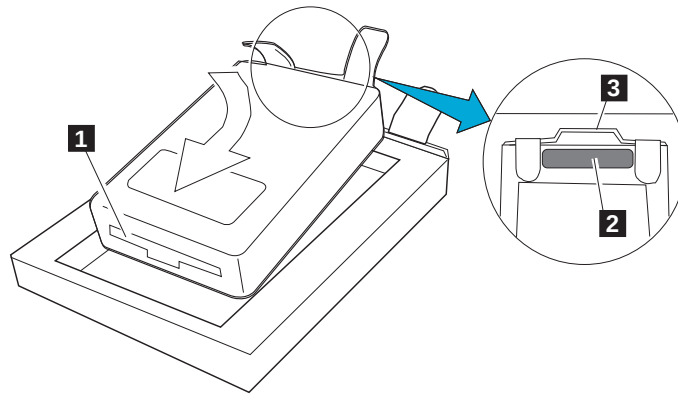
You can use two hard disk drives at the same time by installing a secondary hard disk in the UltraBay. To use the secondary hard disk, you need to purchase another hard disk drive and a hard disk holder. Before installing the secondary hard disk, remove the CD-ROM drive.

Warning:

The hard disk drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. Do not press on, drop, or apply any shock to the hard disk drive.

1 Attach the secondary hard disk drive to the hard disk holder.

- a) Insert the hard disk drive in the hard disk holder so that the slot 1 on the hard disk drive fits into the projection on the hard disk drive.
- b) Press the shaded area 2 until the hard disk firmly snaps into the hard disk holder; then replace the hard disk drive handle 3.



2 Close any running applications on the computer; then make sure the CD-ROM tray is closed.

Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay

Warning:

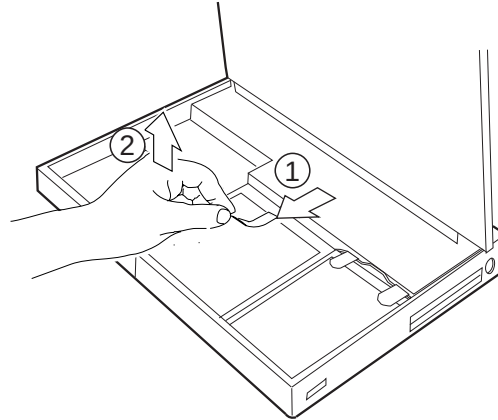
To prevent damage to the CD-ROM drive, make sure the AC Adapter is disconnected from the computer.

The CD-ROM drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. Do not press on, drop, or apply any shock to the CD-ROM drive while it is removed from the computer.

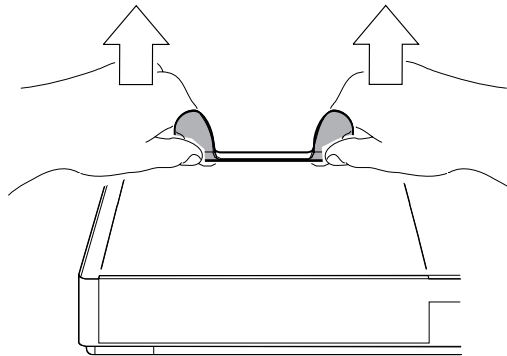
3 Turn off the computer; then disconnect the AC Adapter and all cables from the computer.

4 Open the LCD; then open the keyboard.

5 Remove the battery pack.



6 Lift the drive handle with the plastic tape, and remove the CD-ROM drive.



Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay

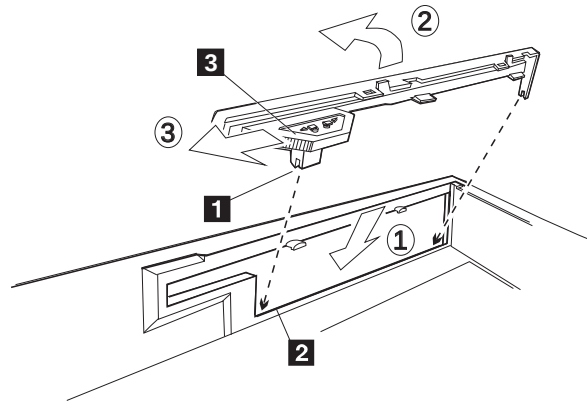
Note:

You can see the lamp on the secondary hard disk, which turns on when data in the secondary hard disk drive is accessed, through the diskette drive bezel.

7 Install the diskette drive bezel from the *inner* side of the computer.

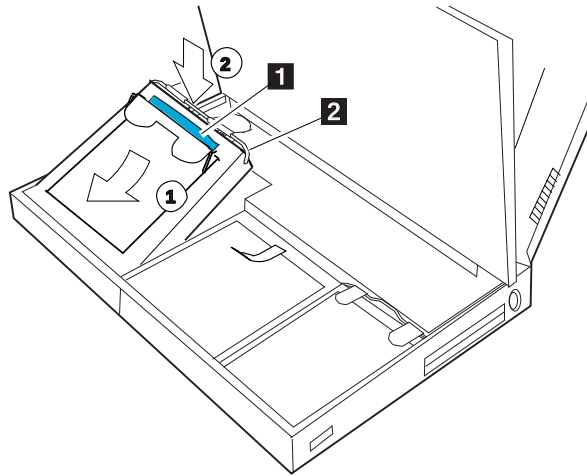
- Fit notch 1 on the lower portion of the bezel into the catch at the bottom of the drive bezel slot 2.
- Push the upper portion of the bezel into the slot until it snaps into place.
- Slide the lever 3 on the bezel to the left as shown.

The following figure shows the installation as seen from the inner side of the computer.



Installing a Secondary Hard Disk Drive in the UltraBay

- 8** Place the hard disk holder (with the hard disk drive attached) into the UltraBay. Press on the shaded area **1** as shown until the drive snaps into the connector; then replace the drive handle **2**.



- 9** Replace the battery pack.

- 10** Close the keyboard; then reconnect all cables.

You have completed the installation of the secondary hard disk drive.

Installing an Option in the UltraBay

Installing an Option in the UltraBay

Note:

When installing the diskette drive into the UltraBay, see page 99.

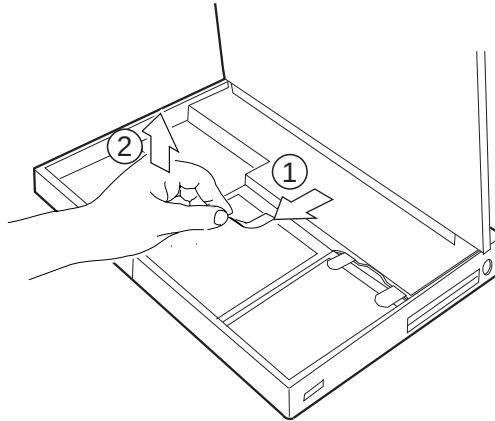
The CD-ROM drive can be removed to install options in its place. Some options may require you to remove the option cover from the left side of the computer.

Warning:

To prevent damage to the CD-ROM drive, make sure the AC Adapter is disconnected from the computer.

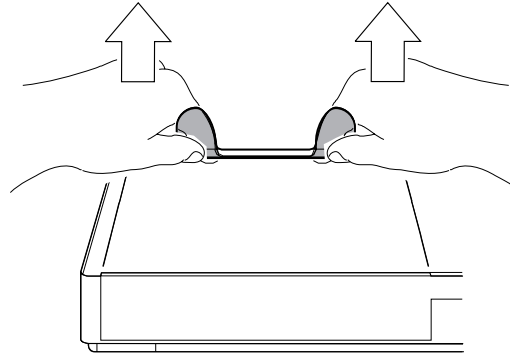
The CD-ROM drive is a very delicate device that needs careful handling. Do not press on, drop, or apply any shock to the CD-ROM drive while it is removed from the computer.

- 1** Close any running applications; then make sure the CD-ROM tray is closed.
- 2** Turn off the computer; then disconnect the AC Adapter and all cables from the computer.
- 3** Open the LCD; then open the keyboard.
- 4** Remove the battery pack.



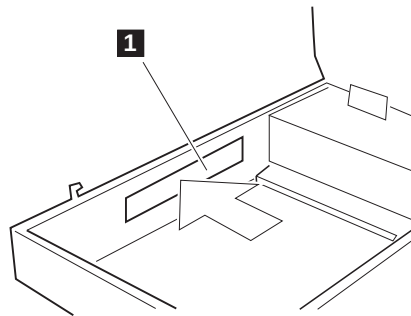
Installing an Option in the UltraBay

- 5** Lift the drive handle with the plastic tape, and remove the CD-ROM drive.



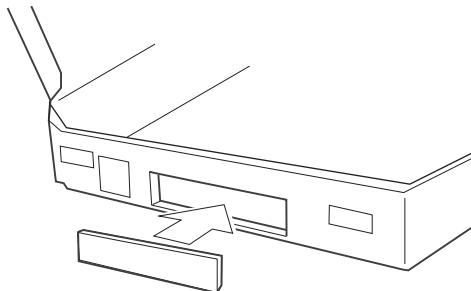
- 6** If the option you are installing has an option cover to be attached at the left side of the computer, do the following:

- a) Push the option cover **1** from the *inner side* of the computer to remove the option cover.



Installing an Option in the UltraBay

- b) Attach the *new* option cover that came with your option to the side of the computer.



To install a blank front bezel:

 Page 99.

- 7** If the option you are installing has a front bezel, attach the *new* front bezel that came with your option (refer to the manual that came with your option).
- 8** Refer to the manual that came with the option to install your option in the UltraBay.
- 9** Replace the battery pack.
- 10** Close the keyboard and reconnect all cables.
- 11** If the option in the UltraBay requires power, turn power on in the ThinkPad Features program.



If you are using OS/2 or Windows:

- 1** Start the ThinkPad Features program.

- 2** Click on the **UltraBay** icon () in the ThinkPad view; then set the power for the UltraBay.

If you are using DOS, type PS2 IDE2 E at the command prompt.

Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit

Note:

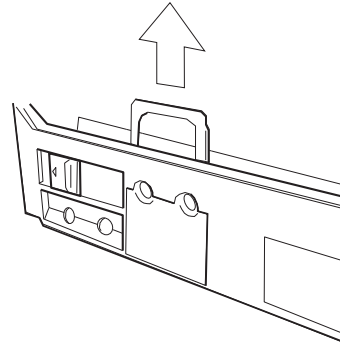
In some countries, the Mwave telephony functions are only available when the DAA/Telephony Kit option is installed.

If the telephone connector on the left side of your computer is one with a square receptacle, the computer can be used for telephony or modem/fax functions without any changes. However, if a blank port cover and port cover are attached, you need to install the DAA/Telephony Kit option to use the Mwave telephony functions.

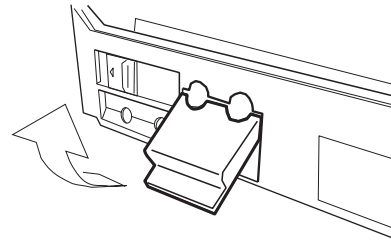
To attach the DAA/Telephony Kit:

1 Turn off the computer and open the keyboard.

2 Remove the metal port cover lock.



3 Remove the blank port cover on the left side of the computer from the lower portion.

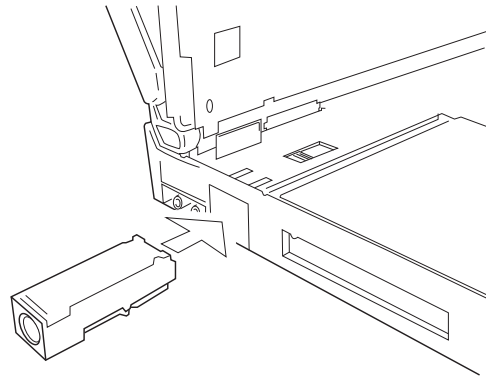


Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit

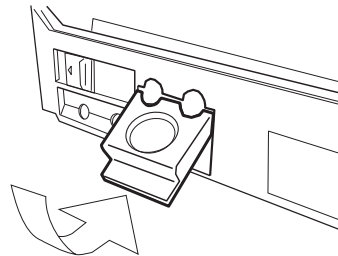
Warning:

Make sure that any locking device is unlocked.

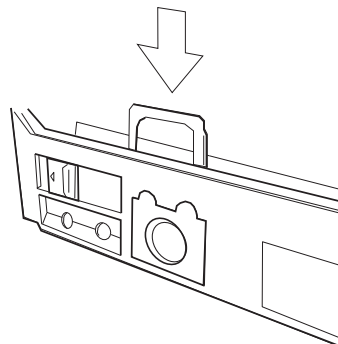
- 4** Install the plug with the round receptacle that came with your option kit. Firmly press it into the connector.



- 5** On the left side of the computer, install the port cover with the round opening that came with your option kit.



- 6** Install the metal port cover lock.



- 7** Close the keyboard.

8 Connect the cables:



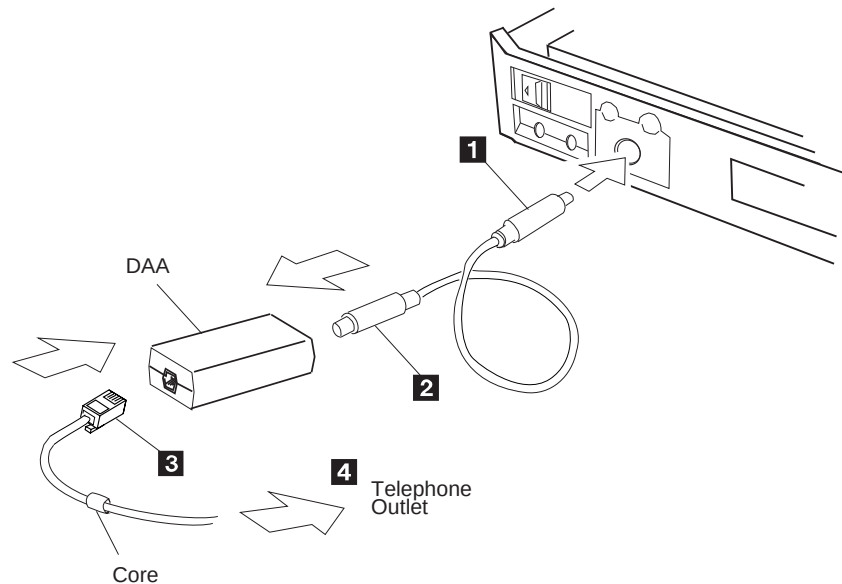
DANGER

To avoid shock hazard, do not connect the telephone cable to or disconnect it from the computer during electrical storms.

Note:

Both ends of the DAA interface cable are identical.

- Connect one end of the DAA interface cable 1 to the connector plug with the round receptacle.
- Connect the other end of the DAA interface cable 2 to the round receptacle on the DAA.
- Connect the ferrite-core end connector 3 of the telephone cable to the square receptacle on the DAA.
- Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the telephone outlet 4 on the wall.





Installing the DAA/Telephony Kit



After you have finished attaching the modem/fax port, install the necessary software by referring to the manual that came with the option kit.

Refer to “Using the Telephony Function” on page 78 for information about how to use the Mwave telephony features.



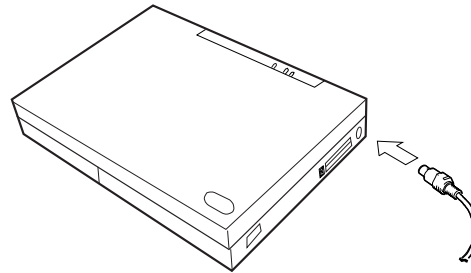
Attaching an External Numeric Keypad or a Mouse

Attaching an External Numeric Keypad or a Mouse

Warning:

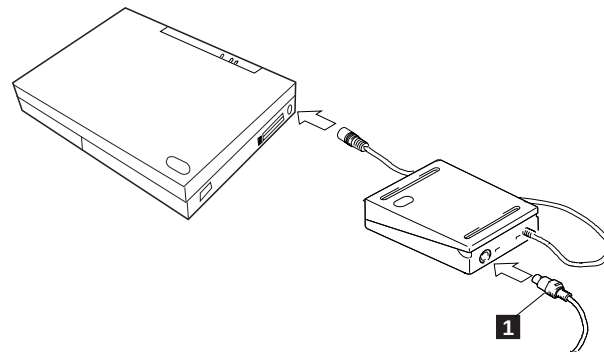
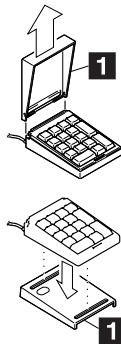
When you connect a mouse other than an IBM PS/2 Miniature Mouse, turn off the computer.

An external numeric keypad or a mouse can be attached directly to the connector on the right side of the computer. You can use both the IBM PS/2 Mouse and TrackPoint III as the pointing device.

**Note:**

You can remove the keypad cover 1 and use it as a stand for the keypad.

If you want to use the external numeric keypad and mouse at the same time, first connect the keypad cable to the computer; then connect the mouse cable 1 to the connector at the rear of the keypad.



Attaching an External Numeric Keypad or a Mouse

Using the Mouse and Other Pointing Devices

Note:

The appropriate software must have been installed already.

A serial mouse connected to the serial port or a device that is not compatible with the PS/2 Mouse can be connected to the external input-device connector. Some mouse types require the TrackPoint III to be disabled before you can use them. To disable the TrackPoint III:



With OS/2 or Windows:

- 1** Start the ThinkPad Features program.
- 2** Select **Setup**.
- 3** Select **Keyboard/Pointing Device**.
- 4** Find the TrackPoint; then click on **Disable** to disable the TrackPoint III.

These changes become effective when computer power is turned off and then on again.

Using the IBM ThinkPad Space Saver Keyboard

When using the IBM ThinkPad Space Saver Keyboard, **do not** install the device driver supplied with the Space Saver Keyboard. When the Space Saver Keyboard is used, the device driver on the computer's Utility Diskette automatically enables or disables the TrackPoint III of the computer when power is turned on.

Attaching an External Keyboard

You can connect an external keyboard to your computer through the keyboard/mouse connector 1 (available separately as an option).

Note:

The computer enters suspend mode when the LCD is closed. If you want to use the computer with the LCD closed, set the suspend option in the ThinkPad Features program so the computer does not enter suspend mode when the LCD is closed.

The external keyboard must be connected through the keyboard/mouse connector. It will not work if it is connected directly to the computer.

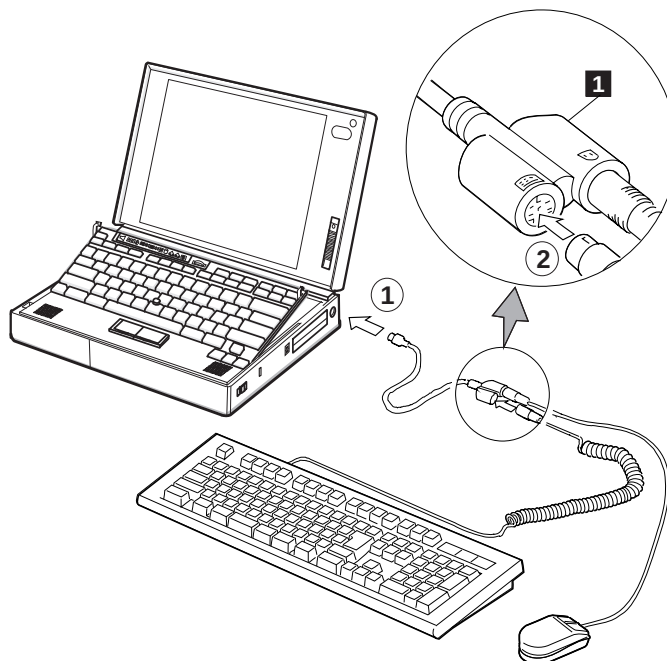
When the external keyboard is attached, the following keys are not available:

- Numeric keypad on the system keyboard
- External numeric keypad

ThinkPad Features program:

 Page 38.

When you attach the external keyboard, turn off the computer and then attach the keyboard/mouse connector and the external keyboard.



Attaching and Replacing an External Display

Attaching an External Display

Note:

When installing an operating system, you must install the display driver before you can use an external display.

The LCD of the computer can display information in SVGA mode (800-by-600 resolution) in 65 536 colors.

A maximum of 1024-by-768 resolution can be produced on any attached external display that supports the resolution mode.

To install the display driver:



Page 203.

Warning:

When you select Both, do not attach an external display that supports only VGA mode (640-by-480 resolution).

Otherwise, the external display screen will be scrambled and the output will not be displayed, or the screen might be damaged.

To attach an external display:

- 1** Change the display mode to **CRT** or **Both**.
(See “Changing the Display Mode” on page 195.)
- 2** Set your monitor type and display device driver.
(See “Setting the Monitor Type and the Display Driver” on page 196.)
- 3** Attach the external display to the computer.
(See “Connecting an External Display to the Computer” on page 197.)

Changing the Display Mode

You can display information on the LCD, the external display, or both by using the following commands:



Using the **Fn** key function:

Press and hold the **Fn** key; then press the **F7** key. The output is displayed sequentially as follows:

External Both
Display

LCD

Entering a PS2 command from the command prompt:

- Type PS2 SC BOTH to display information on both the LCD and external display.
- Type PS2 SC CRT to display information on the external display.
- Type PS2 SC LCD to display information on the LCD.



Using the ThinkPad Features program:

1. Start the ThinkPad Features program and select the **Display** icon.
2. Select:
 - **Both** to display information on both the LCD and external display.
 - **CRT** to display information on the external display.
 - **LCD** to display information on the LCD.
3. Click on the **OK** button.

Attaching and Replacing an External Display

Setting the Monitor Type and the Display Driver

Before attaching the external display to your computer, set the appropriate monitor type and device driver type as follows:



1 Start the ThinkPad Features program.

2 Select the **Display** icon.

3 Select the **Monitor**.

4 Select your display type from the Monitor Selection list, or click on the new resolution and VSYNC (refresh rate) from the list.

5 Click on **OK**.

6 Select **Device Driver**.

7 Click on the new resolution and colors; then click on **OK**.

8 Restart OS/2 or Windows to make the changes effective.

Note:

Refer to the specification of your external display about supported resolution and VSYNC.

Hints and Tips

When you are using OS/2 or Windows, the *virtual screen* function is available with the ThinkPad Features program. It is used to display a part of the high-resolution screen image that is produced by the computer. Other parts can be seen by moving the screen with the TrackPoint III or other pointing device.

Connecting an External Display to the Computer

Warning:

Do not disconnect the external display while the computer is in suspend mode or hibernation mode. If no external display is attached when the computer resumes, the LCD will remain blank and the output will not be displayed. It does not depend on the resolution value.

To attach an external display to the computer:

- 1** Turn off the computer.
- 2** Attach the external display to the external display connector () and to the electrical outlet.
- 3** Turn on the external display and the computer.

Changing the Screen Resolution or Color Depth

To change the screen resolution or color depth of an external display:



For OS/2 or Windows:

- 1** Start the ThinkPad Features program.
- 2** Select the **Display** icon.
- 3** Select **Device Driver**.
- 4** Click on the new resolution and color depth; then click on **OK**.
- 5** Restart OS/2 or Windows to make the changes effective.

Attaching and Replacing an External Display

The computer supports the following color depth and resolution on an attached SVGA display:

Color	Resolution
256 colors	640 by 480
	800 by 600
	1024 by 768
65536 colors	640 by 480
	800 by 600
16 777 216 colors *	640 by 480

Note:

* To use 16 777 216 colors, set the display mode to **CRT** only.

Attaching an IBM Dock I or Dock II Expansion Unit

Warning:

Do not use the Utility Diskette that came with the IBM Dock II.

Note:

Before you dock the IBM Dock I or Dock II to the computer, see *Dock I User's Guide* or *Dock II User's Guide*.

Warning:

When setting up the Dock I or Dock II, avoid any hardware conflicts.

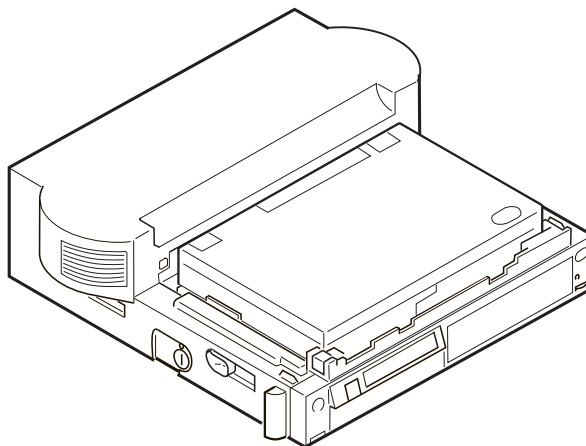
To avoid hardware conflicts:



Page 283.

To expand your computer, you can use an IBM ThinkPad Dock I or Dock II expansion unit. Either unit offers you a portable multimedia environment: CD-ROM drive bay, stereo speakers, and adapter slots for various adapter cards.

The illustration shows the computer attached to the Dock II.



Hints and Tips

When an IBM Dock I expansion unit is attached to the computer, you can adjust the sound volume by using the following key combinations:

When you press and hold **Fn** and then press **PgUp** () , the sound volume increases.

When you press and hold **Fn** and then press **PgDn** () , the sound volume decreases.



Attaching an IBM Dock I or Dock II Expansion Unit



Chapter 7. Installing Software

This chapter provides information about the software installed in your computer and the procedures for installing the necessary device drivers when reinstalling an operating system.

What You Need for Your Computer	202
Installing the Operating System	204
Installing Software for OS/2	205
Installing IBM OS/2 Warp Version 3 or Later	205
Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2	212
Software Parameters in the CONFIG.SYS file	213
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for OS/2	214
Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for OS/2	215
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2	216
Installing the Infrared Device Driver for OS/2	218
Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2 or WIN-OS/2	220
Installing for OS/2	220
Installing for WIN-OS/2	221
Installing the MPEG Device Driver for OS/2	222
Installing the ThinkPad Display Device Driver for OS/2	223
Installing Software for DOS	224
Installing IBM PC DOS Version 7.0 or Later	224
Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS	224
Software Parameters in the CONFIG.SYS file	225
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for DOS	227
Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for DOS	228
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for DOS	230
Installing Software for Windows	232
Installing Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 or Later	233
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for Windows	237
Installing the PCMCIA Features for Windows	238
Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows	240
Installing the MIDI Port Device Driver for Windows	242
Installing the Infrared Device Driver for Windows	243
Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for Windows	244
Installing the MPEG Device Driver for Windows	245
Installing the IBM Video CD Player for Windows	247
Installing the ThinkPad Display Driver for Windows	248

What You Need for Your Computer

What You Need for Your Computer

Your computer comes with the following software already installed:

- Mwave Device Driver
- IR Device Driver
- PCMCIA device driver
- PC Card Director program
- ThinkPad Features program
- ThinkPad display driver
- CD-ROM device driver
- Enhanced Video device driver
- Online book

When reinstalling an operating system, you must install an operating system and the software listed above for your computer to operate as it did at the time of purchase. The online book, however, is available only at the time of purchase and no diskettes are available for reinstallation.

The PC Card client device driver is not part of the preinstalled software. Refer to the manual that came with the PC Card to install the device driver.

Before you begin installing software from diskettes, you must replace the CD-ROM drive with the diskette drive. See "Using the Diskette Drive" on page 99.

Some software is shipped on a CD-ROM along with a diskette, and might require that the CD-ROM drive and diskette drive be attached to the computer at the same time. If this is the case, use the external-diskette-drive connector to connect an external diskette drive. You can also use the IBM Port Replicator, Dock I, or Dock II to attach a diskette drive externally. Otherwise, you need to obtain the diskette-only version of your software.

What You Need for Your Computer

Page numbers:

For OS/2:

- 1 Page 205.
- 2 Page 212.
- 3 Page 214.
- 4 Page 215.
- 5 Page 216.
- 6 Page 218.
- 7 Page 220 and 222.
- 8 Page 223.

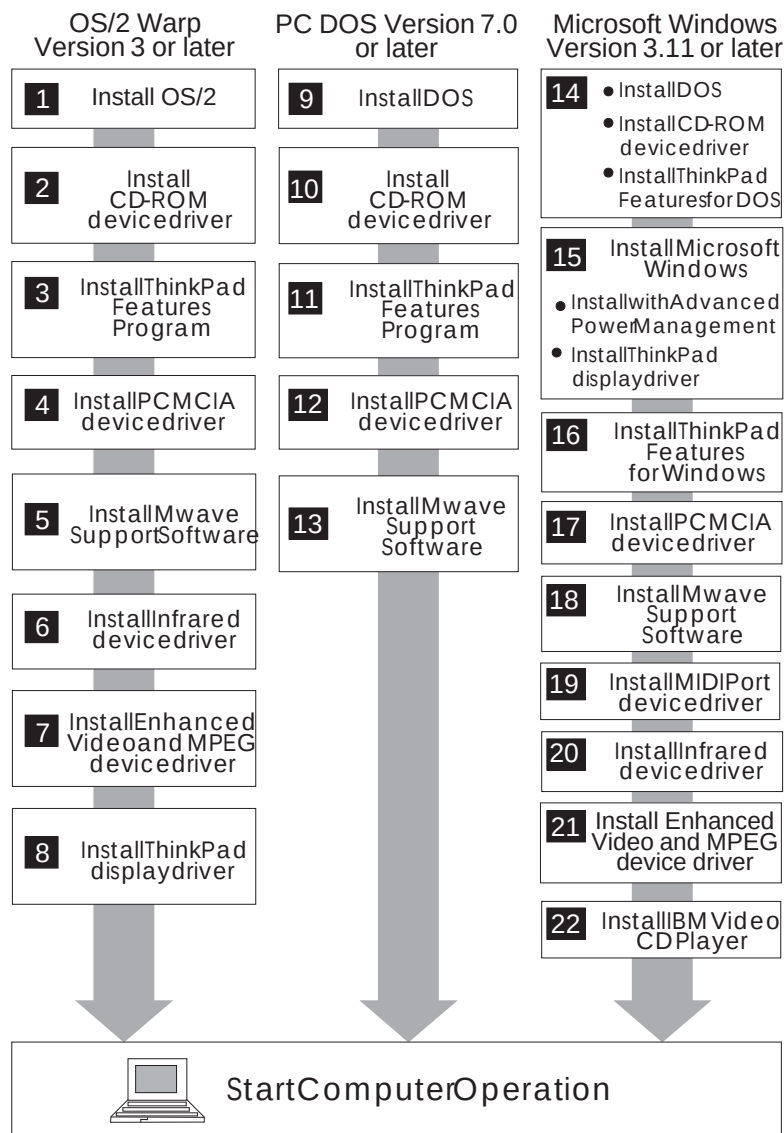
For DOS:

- 9 Page 224.
- 1 Page 224.
- 11 Page 227.
- 12 Page 228.
- 13 Page 230.

For Windows:

- 14 Page 224, 224, and 227.
- 15 Page 233.
- 16 Page 237.
- 17 Page 238.
- 18 Page 240.
- 19 Page 242.
- 2 Page 243.
- 21 Page 244 and 245.
- 22 Page 247.

The following shows you what must be installed for each operating system before you can begin computer operation.



Installing Software

Installing the Operating System

The operating systems supported by your computer are:

IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) Warp Version 3 or later

IBM PC DOS Version 7.0 or later

Microsoft Windows 3.11 or later

Important

If you will be installing Windows 3.11 or later, you ***must*** first do the following for Windows to operate correctly:

Install the ThinkPad display driver instead of the default device drivers that came with Windows.

When the Windows Setup program asks you to select either **Express Setup** or **Custom Setup**, select **C** for Custom Setup.

Refer to the appropriate section to install your operating system and its device drivers:

If you are installing OS/2: go to “Installing Software for OS/2” on page 205.

If you are installing DOS: go to “Installing Software for DOS” on page 224.

If you are installing Windows: go to “Installing Software for Windows” on page 232.



Installing Software for OS/2

This section describes the installation procedures for OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later and its device drivers for your ThinkPad.

Your computer comes with the following software already installed at the time of purchase. When reinstalling OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later, install this software for your computer to work as it did:

- OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later
- CD-ROM device driver
- ThinkPad Features program
- PCMCIA device driver
- Mwave DSP support software
- Infrared device driver
- Enhanced Video device driver
- MPEG device driver
- ThinkPad display driver

Installing IBM OS/2 Warp Version 3 or Later

Your installation of OS/2 Warp will differ, depending on whether you use the *Dual Boot* or the *Boot Manager* for switching between OS/2 Warp and DOS.

Which type are you going to use?

<i>Dual Boot</i>	Go to “Installing OS/2 Warp with Dual Boot” on page 206.
<i>Boot Manager</i>	Go to “Installing OS/2 Warp with the Boot Manager” on page 207.

Installing IBM OS/2 Warp

Installing OS/2 Warp with Dual Boot

When you install OS/2 Warp with Dual Boot, do the following before actually installing OS/2:

To install the DOS ThinkPad Features program:

 Page 227.

To install the Windows ThinkPad Features program:

 Page 237.

Note:

If you have the OS/2 Warp 3.0 FixPak WFP_ (XR0W005), install it after you complete the installation of OS/2 Warp. Follow the instructions in the README.1ST file in diskette 1 of that FixPak.

If DOS and Windows are not installed in the computer, install DOS and Windows, and the ThinkPad Features program for both DOS and Windows.

Install OS/2 Warp.

If you are installing the diskette version of OS/2 Warp, refer to the documentation.

Be sure to pay attention to the following during installation:

- Select **VGA** as the **Primary Display** in the **System Configuration** screen.
- Do not select the **PCMCIA Feature** in the **System Configuration** screen. Leave it as **No Support Installed**.

If you are installing the CD-ROM version of OS/2 Warp using the CD-ROM drive, choose one of the following according to your configuration:

- To use the CD-ROM drive and an externally attached diskette drive, go to “Installing OS/2 Warp Using an External Diskette Drive” on page 208.
- To use the CD-ROM drive and the internal diskette drive and be able to switch between them, go to “Installing OS/2 Warp Using the Internal CD-ROM and Diskette Drive” on page 209.

Important

You need at least 90MB of free space on the hard disk drive.

Installing OS/2 Warp with the Boot Manager

When you install OS/2 Warp with the Boot Manager:

- 1** Install the Boot Manager, referring to the OS/2 Warp documentation.
- 2** Install DOS and Windows, and the ThinkPad Features programs for both DOS and Windows.
- 3** Install OS/2 Warp.

To install the DOS ThinkPad Features program:

 Page 227.

To install the Windows ThinkPad Features program:

 Page 237.

Note:

If you have the OS/2 Warp 3.0 FixPak WFP_ (XR0W005), install it after you complete the installation of OS/2 Warp. Follow the instructions in the README.1ST file in diskette 1 of that FixPak.

If you are installing the diskette version of OS/2 Warp, refer to the documentation.

Be sure to pay attention to the following during installation:

- Select **VGA** as the **Primary Display** at the **System Configuration** screen.
- Do not select the **PCMCIA Feature** at the **System Configuration** screen. Leave it as **No Support Installed**.
- Select **Non-Listed IDE CD-ROM** for the CD-ROM at the **System Configuration** screen.

After OS/2 has been successfully installed, make sure you restart the computer.

If you are installing the CD-ROM version of OS/2 Warp using the CD-ROM drive, choose one of the following according to your configuration:

- To use the CD-ROM drive and an externally attached diskette drive, go to “Installing OS/2 Warp Using an External Diskette Drive” on page 208.
- To use the CD-ROM drive and the internal diskette drive and be able to switch between them, go to “Installing OS/2 Warp Using the Internal CD-ROM and Diskette Drive” on page 209.

Note:

You need at least 90MB of free space on the hard disk drive.

Installing IBM OS/2 Warp

Installing OS/2 Warp Using an External Diskette Drive

Note:

To open the DOS command prompt:

Select **OS/2 System**.

Select **Command Prompts**; then select **DOS Full Screen**..

Note:

To shut down OS/2:

Move the mouse pointer to a blank part of your OS/2 desktop. Press the right click button. Select **Shutdown**.

Note:

If you have the OS/2 Warp 3.0 FixPak WFP_ (XR0W005), install it after you complete the installation of OS/2 Warp. Follow the instructions in the README.1ST file in diskette 1 of that FixPak.

- 1** Ensure that DOS and Windows are installed in the computer.
- 2** Insert the OS/2 Warp CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 3** Open the DOS command prompt and change to the drive for the CD-ROM drive.
- 4** Type **CDINST** and press **Enter**.
Make the copies of the OS/2 Warp diskettes labeled "OS/2 Installation Diskette" and "OS/2 Diskette 1."
- 5** Shut down the system and turn off the computer.
- 6** Insert the OS/2 Installation Diskette into the external diskette drive and turn on the computer.
- 7** When you are prompted to insert OS/2 Diskette 1, insert it into the external diskette drive and the OS/2 Warp CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 8** Follow the instructions on the screen until the installation is complete.
Be sure to pay attention to the following during installation:
Select **VGA** as the **Primary Display** at the **System Configuration** screen.
Do not select the **PCMCIA Feature** at the **System Configuration** screen. Leave it as **No Support Installed**.
Select **Non-Listed IDE CD-ROM** for the CD-ROM at the **System Configuration** screen.
- 9** Shut down OS/2 and restart the system.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2" on page 212.

Installing OS/2 Warp Using the Internal CD-ROM and Diskette Drive

The following terms are used in these instructions:

- [*cd:*] Your CD-ROM drive letter, followed by a colon
[*c:*] Target hard disk drive letter, followed by a colon

1 Ensure that you have at least 90MB of free space on the hard disk drive.

2 Ensure that DOS and Windows are installed on the hard disk drive.

3 Insert the OS/2 Warp CD-ROM into the internal CD-ROM drive.

Note:

To open the DOS command prompt:

Select **OS/2 System**.
Select **Command Prompts**; then
select **DOS Full Screen**.

4 Open the DOS command prompt; then enter the following to copy all the diskette images from the OS/2 Warp CD-ROM to the hard disk drive (do not type the [] brackets):

```
xcopy [cd:]\os2image\ . [c:]\os2image\ . /s
copy [cd:]\diskimgs\ . [c:]\os2image
copy [cd:]\diskimgs\os2\35\disk .dsk [c:]\os2image
copy [cd:]\diskimgs\os2\35\disk1.dsk [c:]\os2image
```

Installing IBM OS/2 Warp

Note:

To shut down OS/2:

Move the mouse pointer to a blank part of your OS/2 desktop. Press the right click button. Select **Shutdown**.

To install diskette drive:



Page 99.

5 Shut down the system and turn off the computer.

6 Replace the CD-ROM drive with the diskette drive.

7 Turn on the computer.

8 Create the “OS/2 Disk 1” and “OS/2 Installation Diskette” as follows:

a) Place the “OS/2 Disk 1” label on a blank diskette formatted for 1.44MB and insert it into the diskette drive.

b) Enter the following to create the diskette:

```
C:\>cd os2image
C:\>OS2IMAGE\>loaddiskf disk1.dsk a: /f/y
```

c) After the diskette has been created, find the following line in the CONFIG.SYS file on the diskette. You can use the E editor supplied with DOS or any other editor.

```
set os2_shell=sysinst2.exe
```

Change the line to:

```
set os2_shell=sysinst2.exe [c:]\os2image
```

Save the CONFIG.SYS file.

d) Place the “OS/2 Installation Diskette” label on a blank diskette formatted for 1.44MB and insert it into the diskette drive.

e) Enter the following to create the diskette:

```
C:\>cd os2image
C:\>loaddiskf disk .dsk a: /f/y
```

9 Install OS/2 Warp as follows:

a) With the OS/2 Installation Diskette still inserted in the diskette drive, restart your system by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+Del**.

Note:

Because your CD-ROM drive is not installed in the computer at this time and cannot be recognized automatically by OS/2 Warp, you need to make OS/2 Warp recognize the CD-ROM drive.

Note:

If you have the OS/2 Warp 3.0 FixPak WFP_ (XR0W005), install it after you complete the installation of OS/2 Warp. Follow the instructions in the README.1ST file in diskette 1 of that FixPak.

- b) Follow the instructions on the screen. Be sure to pay attention to the following during installation:

Select **VGA** as the **Primary Display** at the **System Configuration** screen.

Do not select the **PCMCIA Feature** at the **System Configuration** screen. Leave it as **No Support Installed**.

Select **Non-Listed IDE CD-ROM** for the CD-ROM at the **System Configuration** screen.

- c) When OS/2 Warp installation is complete, shut down OS/2 and turn off the computer.
- d) Replace the diskette drive with the CD-ROM drive.
- e) Turn on the computer.

10 Clean up (optional).

The previous steps leave about 45MB of image files on your hard disk drive. If you plan to reinstall soon, or install to another hard disk drive, you might want to leave the files in place. If you want to remove them to save hard disk space:

- a) Open the **OS/2 System** folder.
- b) Open the **Drives** folder.
- c) Open **[c:] drive**.
- d) Click on the **OS2IMAGE** folder with the right mouse button to bring up the folders menu.
- e) Click on the **Delete** menu.
- f) When you are asked to confirm deletion, choose **Yes**.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2" on page 212.

Installing CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2

Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2

This section describes the installation of the CD-ROM device driver for OS/2. Have the diskettes that came with the OS/2 system ready; then install the CD-ROM device driver for OS/2:

- 1** Turn on the computer; then start OS/2.
- 2** Double-click on the **OS/2 System** icon.
- 3** Double-click on the **System Setup** icon.
- 4** Double-click on the **Selective Install** icon.
- 5** Select **CD-ROM Device Support**; then click on **OK**.
- 6** Select **Other** and click on **OK**; then click on **OK** again at the System Configuration menu.
- 7** At the OS/2 Setup and Configuration menu, select **Install**.
- 8** Follow the instructions on the screen.
Do not shut down the system when you are told to. Follow these instructions instead.
- 9** Insert the ThinkPad CD-ROM Device Driver Diskette into the diskette drive.
- 10** Double-click on the **System Setup** icon; then double-click on the **Device Driver Install** icon.
- 11** Verify the source directory for the device driver (A:\OS2); then follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.

You have completed the installation of the CD-ROM device driver. If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for OS/2" on page 214.

Installing CD-ROM Device Driver for OS/2

Software Parameters in the CONFIG.SYS file

When the CD-ROM device driver is installed in your computer, OS/2 automatically modifies the CONFIG.SYS file. The following describes the parameters for the CD-ROM device driver:

`DEVICE=OS2CDROM.DMD [options]`

This is the CD-ROM device class driver, where *options* can be:

- [/V]** Displays messages on the LCD during the installation.
- [/Q]** Does not display messages on the LCD during the installation.

`BASEDEV=IBMIDECD.FLT [options]`

This is the IDE adapter device driver for ATA Packet Interface devices where *options* can be:

- [/V]** Displays messages on the LCD during the installation.
- [/Q]** Does not display messages on the LCD during the installation.

`IFS=[drive]:[path]CDFS.IFS [options]`

This is the ISO9660/HSG file system for OS/2. All CD data discs are recorded with this file format. *Options* can be:

- [/C:n]** Indicates how many 64KB segments to use for the sector cache. The default is $n=2$, two 64KB segments.
- [/M:n]** Indicates the maximum number of file sectors to be read at a time. The default is $n=8$, 8 sectors.
- [/Q]** Does not display messages on the LCD during the installation.

For other parameters, type `HELP` parameter to see the related syntax and refer to the OS/2 online help.

Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for OS/2

Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for OS/2

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the ThinkPad Features program.

Note:

To open the OS/2 full screen:

1. Select **OS/2 System**.
2. Select **Command Prompts**; then select **OS/2 Full Screen**.

Note:

To open the DOS full screen:

1. Select **OS/2 System**.
2. Select **Command Prompts**; then select **DOS Full Screen**.

To install the ThinkPad Features program:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start OS/2.
- 2** Insert the Utility Diskette into the diskette drive.
- 3** Install the ThinkPad System Management device driver.
 - a) Open the System Setup folder in the OS/2 System folder.
 - b) Select **Device Driver Install**.
 - c) Click on the **Install...** button.
 - d) Click on **ThinkPad System Management Device Driver**; then click on **OK**.
- 4** Open the OS/2 full screen command prompt.
- 5** Go to the A: prompt and type **INSTALL2**; then press **Enter**.
- 6** Install the DOS ThinkPad Features program to use the PS2 commands.
 - a) Exit the OS/2 full screen; then open the DOS full screen.
 - b) Follow the instructions in "Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for DOS" on page 227.

You have completed the installation of the ThinkPad Features program.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for OS/2" on page 215.

Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for OS/2

PC Card Director:



Page 54.

When installing an operating system, you need to install the following device drivers and software associated with PCMCIA before you can use the PC Cards:

- Card Services device driver
- Socket Services device driver
- Resource Map Utility device driver
- PC Card Power Management device driver
- PC Card Director Utility
- PC Card client device drivers (only when PC Card Director does not support the PC Card)

To install the PCMCIA device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start the operating system.
- 2** Insert the PC Card Director for OS/2 diskette into the diskette drive.
- 3** Open the OS/2 full screen command prompt.
- 4** Type `C:\>A:\PCMINST2` on the command line; then press **Enter**.
- 5** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 6** Click on **OK** when you have completed the installation.
- 7** After the installation is complete, close all applications, remove the diskette from the diskette drive, and restart the system.

Note:

Whenever you update the CONFIG.SYS file, refer to "Adding to the CONFIG.SYS File" on page 293.

You have completed the installation of the PCMCIA device driver for OS/2.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2" on page 216.

Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2

Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Mwave DSP support software.

If you have multiple operating systems, you might need to install multiple versions of the Mwave DSP support software. For example, to enable OS/2 and Windows applications for Mwave functions, two separate Mwave DSP support software installations are required: one for OS/2 and one for Windows.

The Mwave DSP support software is supplied in the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes or in the hard disk drive of your computer.

If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were not supplied with your computer, the support software is contained on the hard disk drive. See the READ.ME file in the root directory of the hard disk to install the Mwave DSP support software.

If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were supplied with your computer, install the Mwave DSP support software as follows:

- 1** Turn on the computer; then start OS/2.
- 2** Open the OS/2 full screen command prompt.
- 3** Insert the Mwave DSP Features Diskette 1 for OS/2 into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:SETUP; then press **Enter**.
The installation window appears on the screen.
- 5** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 6** Restart OS/2 to make the Mwave features effective.
- 7** Install Mwave MPPM audio support software as follows:
 - a) Insert the Mwave DSP Features Diskette for OS/2 Audio into the diskette drive.
 - b) Type A:SETUP at the command prompt; then press **Enter**.
 - c) Follow the instructions on the screen.

Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for OS/2

- 8** After the installation is complete, remove any diskette from the diskette drive; then restart OS/2 to activate the Mwave DSP support software.

You have completed the installation of the Mwave DSP support software for OS/2.

When You Use the WIN-OS/2 Environment

If you use the Mwave functions in WIN-OS/2:

1. Install the Mwave DSP support software for Windows in a full screen WIN-OS/2 environment with the procedure on page 240.
2. Check your **WIN-OS/2 Settings** and modify them as follows, referring to your OS/2 manuals:

WIN_RUN_MODE: 3.1 Enhanced Compatibility

HW_TIMER: ON

INT_DURING_IO: ON

DOS_BACKGROUND_EXECUTION: ON

You have completed the installation of the Mwave DSP support software.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the Infrared Device Driver for OS/2" on page 218.

Installing Infrared Device Driver for OS/2

Installing the Infrared Device Driver for OS/2

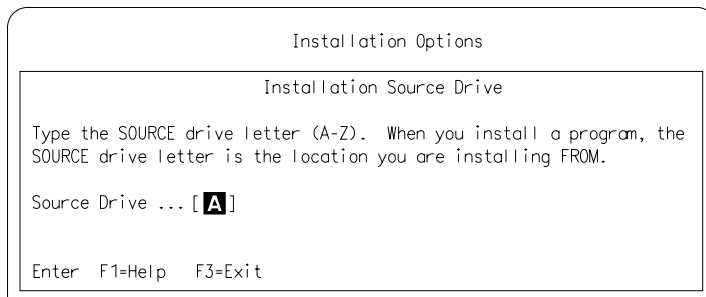
Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Infrared device driver.

To install the infrared device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start OS/2.
- 2** If you have not installed DOS and WIN-OS2 support for OS/2, install it by referring to your operating system documents.
- 3** Go to the DOS command prompt.
- 4** Insert the Infrared Features diskette into the diskette drive.
- 5** Type A:UINSTALL and press **Enter**.

The following screen appears:



- 6** Press **Enter**; then follow the instructions on the screen.

Select **Install WIN-OS/2 ThinkPad Infrared Driver** when you are asked.

You have completed the installation of the Infrared device driver.

Installing Infrared Device Driver for OS/2

Starting TranXit or Other Infrared Applications

If you are going to start TranXit or any other infrared applications that use the ThinkPad infrared device driver from:

The Program Manager window, do the following:

1. Click on the Program Manager object in the **Windows Programs** folder or the **WIN-OS2** (full screen or window) object in the **Command Prompts** folder with the right mouse button.
2. Select **Settings, Session**, and then **WIN-OS/2 Settings**.
3. Modify the following setting as shown:

COM_DIRECT_ACCESS ON

A separate object that you have created for the infrared application, do the following:

1. Click on the object with the right mouse button.
2. Select **Settings, Session**, and then check **Separate Session**.
3. Select **WIN-OS/2 Settings** and modify the following setting as shown:

COM_DIRECT_ACCESS ON

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue installation with "Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2 or WIN-OS/2" on page 220.

Installing Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2

Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2 or WIN-OS/2

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Enhanced Video device driver.

This section describes the installation of the Enhanced Video device driver for OS/2 or WIN-OS/2, which enables the video in/out ports and smooth playback.

Installing for OS/2

- 1** Turn off the computer and start OS/2.
- 2** Open the Multimedia folder from the desktop.
- 3** Click on the **Multimedia Application Install** icon.
- 4** Insert the Enhanced Video Features Diskette for OS/2 into the diskette drive of the computer.
- 5** Make sure the drive letter is A:; then click on **OK**.
- 6** Follow the instructions on the screen.

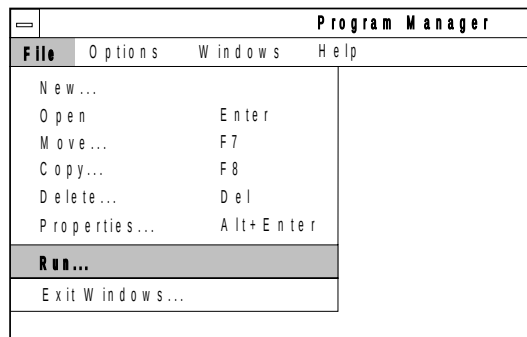
You have completed the installation of the Enhanced Video features.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the MPEG Device Driver for OS/2" on page 222.

Installing Enhanced Video Device Driver for OS/2

Installing for WIN-OS/2

- 1** Turn on the computer and start WIN-OS/2.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- 3** Insert the Enhanced Video Device Drivers diskette for Windows into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:EVSETUP2; then press **Enter** and follow the instructions on the screen.
- 5** After the installation is complete, remove the diskette and restart the system to activate the Enhanced Video Device Driver.

You have completed the installation of the Enhanced Video features.

When You Use the WIN-OS/2 Environment

If you use the Enhanced Video function in WIN-OS/2, check your **WIN-OS/2 Settings** and modify them as follows, referring to your OS/2 manuals:

WIN_RUN_MODE: 3.1 Enhanced Compatibility
HW_TIMER: ON
INT_DURING_IO: ON
DOS_BACKGROUND_EXECUTION: ON

Installing MPEG Device Driver for OS/2

To run the Video Capture and Playback functions, refer to the Video for Windows or compatible software manuals.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the MPEG Device Driver for OS/2."

Installing the MPEG Device Driver for OS/2

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the MPEG device driver.

The MPEG device driver enables playback for MPEG motion videos, CD-I movies, and video CDs. To install the MPEG device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start OS/2.
- 2** Open the Multimedia folder from the desktop.
- 3** Click on the **Multimedia Application Install** icon.
- 4** Insert the MPEG Device Driver diskette into the diskette drive of the computer.
- 5** Make sure the drive letter is A:; then click on **OK**.
- 6** Follow the instructions on the screen.

You have completed the installation of the MPEG device driver.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the ThinkPad Display Device Driver for OS/2" on page 223.

Installing ThinkPad Display Device Driver for OS/2

Installing the ThinkPad Display Device Driver for OS/2

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the ThinkPad display device driver.

The display driver enables you to use screen resolutions from 640 by 480 to 1024 by 768 and colors from 256 to 16 million for the LCD and external display. (See page 197 for possible combinations of resolution and color.) The display driver also takes advantage of the computer's video capability.

ThinkPad Features:



Page 38.

Before Installation

Before you begin installing the display driver, set the display device mode to *LCD*: select the **Display** icon and then **LCD** in the ThinkPad Features program; or at the command prompt, type **PS2 SC LCD** and press **Enter**.

To install the ThinkPad display device driver:

- 1** Start OS/2.
- 2** Insert the ThinkPad Video Features Diskette for OS/2 into the diskette drive.
- 3** Open the OS/2 full screen or OS/2 window.
- 4** Go to the A: prompt; then type **INSTALL** and press **Enter**.
A:>INSTALL
- 5** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 6** After the installation is complete, remove the diskette, shut down OS/2, and restart the system.

You have completed the installation of the display driver for OS/2.

Installing CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS



Installing Software for DOS

This section describes the installation procedures for DOS Version 7.0 or later and its device drivers for your ThinkPad.

Your computer comes with the following software already installed at the time of purchase. When reinstalling DOS Version 7.0 or later, install this software for your computer to work as it did:

- DOS Version 7.0 or later
- CD-ROM device driver
- ThinkPad Features program
- PCMCIA device driver
- Mwave support software

Installing IBM PC DOS Version 7.0 or Later

Follow the instructions in the operating-system documentation. If you also are installing Microsoft Windows 3.11 or later, go to "Installing Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 or Later" on page 233. Otherwise, if you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with the CD-ROM device driver.

Installing the CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the CD-ROM device driver.

To install the CD-ROM device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer.
- 2** Insert the CD-ROM Device Driver Diskette into the diskette drive.
- 3** Type A:; then type UINSTALL.

Installing CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS

4 Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.

When you are prompted for the directories of the source file and destination, make sure the source directory is A: and the destination is C:.

5 After the installation is complete, remove any diskette from the diskette drive and restart the system.

You have completed the installation of the CD-ROM device driver. If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with the ThinkPad Features program.

Software Parameters in the CONFIG.SYS file

When the CD-ROM device driver is installed in your computer, UINSTALL automatically modifies the CONFIG.SYS file or the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. The following are the parameters for the CD-ROM device driver.

```
DEVICE=[drive:][path]IBMTPCD.SYS /R [/C] [/S]
```

This is the CD-ROM device driver (IBMTPCD.SYS). Make sure this line is inserted after the EMM386 statement.

/R Enables the resident type device driver. Even when the CD-ROM drive is not installed at power-on, the device driver can be loaded in the memory.

[/C] Sets the cache size in the XMS memory. When this parameter is set, the cache size in the XMS memory is 512 sectors. When it is not set, the default is 0.

[/S] Sets the power-saving mode to OFF. When using DOS with another operating system (for example, when using it with OS/2 in dual boot), set the power-saving mode to OFF using this parameter.

```
[drive:][path]MSCDEX.EXE /D:TPCD 1 [/M:n][/E][/V][/L:x]
```

The Microsoft CD-ROM Extensions (MSCDEX.EXE) program is an executable program for MS-DOS Version 3.11 or later that works in conjunction with the device driver (IBMTPCD.SYS) to

Installing CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS

allow your computer to access the CD-ROM drive, where *options* can be:

- /D** Specifies the name of the CD-ROM drive, TPCD001.
- [/M:n]** Specifies the number of sector buffers to temporarily store the most recent disc data. The default is $n=4$.
- [/E:]** Specifies that the computer will use expanded memory, if available.
- [/V:]** Displays on the LCD a summary of RAM allocation and expanded memory usage at power-on.
- [/L:drive letter]** Specifies the drive letter for the CD-ROM drive. Be sure not to assign a drive letter already used by another drive, otherwise, the computer cannot access the CD-ROM drive.

SMARTDRV cache for Photo CDs

If you are using DOS SMARTDRV caches and planning to use a Photo CD or multiple session discs, you have to add the `/U` parameter to the SMARTDRV line in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. This is because Photo CDs or multiple session discs are not compatible with the SMARTDRV caches.

For other parameters, type `HELP` parameter to see the related syntax, and refer to the OS/2 online help.

Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for DOS

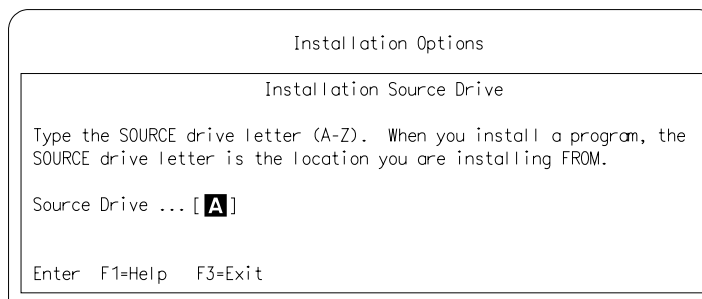
Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the ThinkPad Features program.

Do the following to install the ThinkPad Features program:

- 1** Turn on the computer.
- 2** Insert the Utility Diskette into the diskette drive; then type **A:UINSTALL** at the DOS prompt and press **Enter**.

The following screen appears:



Installation Options

Installation Source Drive

Type the SOURCE drive letter (A-Z). When you install a program, the SOURCE drive letter is the location you are installing FROM.

Source Drive ... [A]

Enter F1=Help F3=Exit

- 3** Press **Enter**.
- 4** Select **Install DOS ThinkPad Features and Fuel-Gauge Program** from the Installation Options menu; then follow the instructions on the screen.

You have completed the installation of the ThinkPad Features program.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with the PCMCIA device driver.

Installing PCMCIA Device Driver for DOS

Installing the PCMCIA Device Driver for DOS

Note:

Do not install Phoenix** PCMCIA support in IBM PC DOS 7.0.

When installing an operating system, you need to install the following device drivers and software associated with PCMCIA before you can use the PC Cards:

PC Card Director:



Page 54.

Card Services device driver
Socket Services device driver
Resource Map Utility device driver
PC Card Power Management device driver
PC Card Director Utility
PC Card client device drivers (only when PC Card Director does not support the PC Card)

To install the PCMCIA device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start the operating system; then insert the PC Card Director for DOS/Windows diskette into the diskette drive.
- 2** Type `C:\>A:`; then press **Enter** to go to the A: prompt.
- 3** Type `A:\>PCMCINST.D`; then press **Enter**.

The following screen appears:

```
Installation Options
Type the SOURCE drive letter (A-Z). When you install a program, the SOURCE
drive letter is the location you are installing FROM.

Source Drive ...[A]

Enter      F1=Help  F3=Exit
```

Installing PCMCIA Device Driver for DOS

4 Press **Enter**.

5 Press **Enter** again when the confirmation message appears.

The Installation Options menu appears.

6 Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note:

Whenever you update the CONFIG.SYS file, see page 293.

7 After the installation is complete, close all applications and remove the diskette from the diskette drive.

You have completed the installation of the PCMCIA device driver for DOS.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with the Mwave DSP support software.

Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for DOS

Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for DOS

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Mwave DSP support software.

If you have multiple operating systems, you might need to install the Mwave DSP support software for each operating system. For example, to enable DOS and Windows applications for Mwave functions, two separate Mwave DSP support software installations are required: one for DOS and one for Windows.

The Mwave DSP support software is supplied in the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes or on the hard disk drive of your computer.

If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were not supplied with your computer, the support software is contained on the hard disk drive. See the READ.ME file in the root directory of the hard disk to install the Mwave DSP support software.

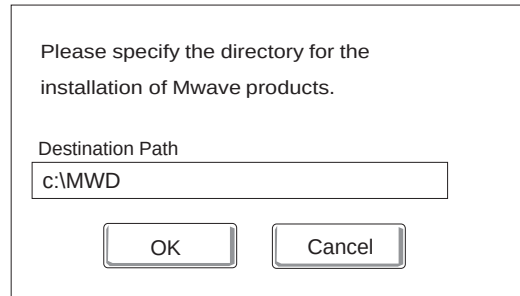
If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were supplied with your computer, install the Mwave DSP support software as follows:

- 1** Turn on the computer.
- 2** Insert the Mwave DSP Features Diskette 1 for DOS into the diskette drive.

Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for DOS

- 3** At the command prompt, type `A:INSTALL`; then press **Enter**.

The following screen, which enables you to specify the directory location of Mwave DSP support software, appears:



Please specify the directory for the installation of Mwave products.

Destination Path

- 4** If this directory is acceptable, press **Enter**. Otherwise, type the directory name; then press **Enter**.
- 5** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 6** After the installation is complete, remove any diskette from the diskette drive; then restart DOS to activate the Mwave DSP support software.

You have completed the installation of the Mwave DSP support software for DOS.

Installing Windows Software



Installing Software for Windows

This section describes the installation procedures for Windows Version 3.11 or later and its device drivers for your ThinkPad.

Your computer comes with the following software already installed at the time of purchase. When reinstalling Windows Version 3.11 or later, install this software for your computer to work as it did:

- DOS Version 7.0 or later
- CD-ROM device driver
- ThinkPad Features program for DOS
- Windows Version 3.11 or later
- ThinkPad display driver
- ThinkPad Features program
- PCMCIA device driver
- Mwave support software
- Infrared device driver
- Enhanced Video device driver
- MPEG device driver

Important

If you will be installing Windows 3.11 or later, you **must** first do the following for Windows to operate correctly:

When the Windows Setup program asks you to select either **Express Setup** or **Custom Setup**, select **C** for Custom Setup.

Install the ThinkPad display driver instead of the default device drivers that came with Windows.

Installing Microsoft Windows Version 3.11 or Later

Windows operates in a DOS environment. Install the following before installing Windows:

DOS Version 7.0 or later (see your DOS manuals)
CD-ROM Device Driver for DOS (see page 224)
ThinkPad Features for DOS (see page 227)

Important

Before you install Windows Version 3.11 or later, you ***must*** do the following for Windows to operate correctly:

When the Windows Setup program asks you to select either **Express Setup** or **Custom Setup**, select **C** for Custom Setup.

Install the ThinkPad display driver instead of the default device drivers that came with Windows.

Do the following to install Windows Version 3.11 or later with Advanced Power Management (APM) and the ThinkPad display driver.

1 Turn on the computer.

2 Install Windows Version 3.11 or later *with* the APM option:

Important

When the Windows Setup program asks you to select **Express Setup** or **Custom Setup**, type **C** for **Custom Setup**.

a) Start the installation as specified in the Windows manual.

Installing Microsoft Windows

Note:

If you have installed OS/2, the path to install Windows may have changed to C:\OS2\MDOS\WINOS2 (C is the drive on which you installed OS/2). If so, change the path to:

C:\WINDOWS

- b) When the Windows Setup program asks you to select **Express Setup** or **Custom Setup**, type **C** for **Custom Setup**.
- c) Continue installing Windows Version 3.11 until the following screen appears.

Windows Setup =====

Setup has determined that your system includes the following hardware and software components. If your computer or network appears on the Hardware Compatibility List with an asterisk, press F1 for Help.

Computer: MS-DOS System
Display: VGA
Mouse: Microsoft, or IBM PS/2

- d) Using the Up Arrow (↑), highlight **MS-DOS System** and press **Enter**.
- e) Using the Down Arrow (↓), highlight **MS-DOS System with APM** and press **Enter**.

Verify that **Computer** has changed to **MS-DOS System with APM** as shown below. If the item has not changed, return to step 2d.

Windows Setup =====

Setup has determined that your system includes the following hardware and software components. If your computer or network appears on the Hardware Compatibility List with an asterisk, press F1 for Help.

Computer: MS-DOS System with APM
Display: VGA
Mouse: Microsoft, or IBM PS/2

3 When you have completed the installation of Windows Version 3.11, edit the AUTOEXEC.BAT file so that the computer will use the correct mouse driver.

When Windows Version 3.11 is installed, the computer is automatically configured to use the MOUSE.COM driver provided by Windows Version 3.11. However, for correct operation, your computer must use the MOUSE.COM driver that came with DOS.

- a) At the DOS command prompt (usually C:\>), type
E\AUTOEXEC.BAT and press **Enter**.
- b) Find the line: C:\WINDOWS\MOUSE.COM /Y
- c) Change it to: C:\DOS\MOUSE.COM /Y
- d) Save the file and restart the system.

Note:

You can change the display resolution type by using the ThinkPad Features program after completing the installation.

4 Select your display resolution type:

- a) Using the Up Arrow (↑), highlight **Display** and press **Enter**.
- b) Select **Other (Requires disk...)** from the menu.
- c) Insert the Video Features Diskette for Windows 3.1 into the diskette drive; then type A: and press **Enter**.
- d) Select your desired resolution from the menu and press **Enter**.

Verify that **Display** has changed to your desired resolution type (an example is shown in the following screen). If the item has not changed, return to step 4a.

Installing Microsoft Windows

Windows Setup =====

Setup has determined that your system includes the following hardware and software components. If your computer or network appears on the Hardware Compatibility List with an asterisk, press F1 for Help.

Computer: MS-DOS System with APM
Display: Cyber932 8 x6 256 small font
Mouse: Microsoft, or IBM PS/2

e) Press **Enter** to continue the installation.

f) Restart the system.

When you start Windows from the DOS prompt, do not close the LCD while the program is loading; if you do, the computer will stop running.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for Windows" on page 237.

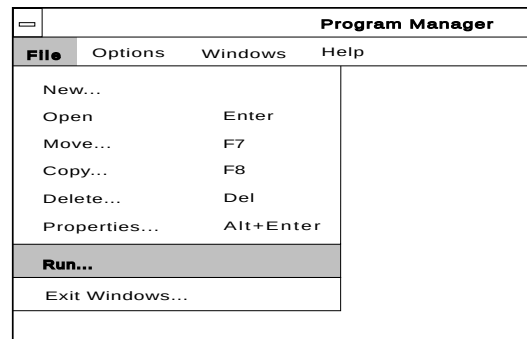
Installing the ThinkPad Features Program for Windows

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the ThinkPad Features program.

If you are going to use Windows, install the ThinkPad Features program for DOS first (see page 227); then do the following to install the ThinkPad Features program for Windows:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start Windows.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- 3** Insert the Utility Diskette into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:\INSTALLW and press **Enter**.

You have completed the installation of the ThinkPad Features program.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the PCMCIA Features for Windows" on page 238.

Installing PCMCIA Features for Windows

Installing the PCMCIA Features for Windows

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the PCMCIA device driver.

The PCMCIA device driver for Windows must be installed with Windows 3.11 or a later version with enhanced mode. Otherwise, it cannot be installed.

You must install the following device drivers and software associated with PCMCIA before you can use the PC Cards:

- Card Services device driver
- Socket Services device driver
- Resource Map Utility device driver
- PC Card Power Management device driver
- PC Card Director Utility
- PC Card client device drivers (only when PC Card Director does not support the PC Card)

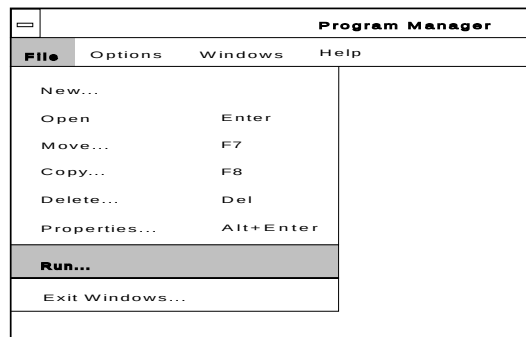
PC Card Director:



Page 54.

To install the PCMCIA device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start the operating system.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- 3** Insert the PC Card Director for DOS/Windows diskette into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:PCMINSTW and press **Enter**.
When the dialog box for the installation program appears, click on **OK**.
- 5** Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.

Installing PCMCIA Features for Windows

6 After the installation is complete, remove the diskette from the diskette drive; then restart the computer.

You have completed the installation of the PCMCIA device driver for Windows.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with “Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows” on page 240.

Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows

Installing the Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Mwave DSP support software.

If you have multiple operating systems, you might need to install the Mwave DSP support software for each operating system. For example, to enable DOS and Windows applications for Mwave functions, two separate Mwave DSP support software installations are required: one for DOS and one for Windows.

The Mwave DSP support software is supplied in the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes or on the hard disk drive of your computer.

If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were not supplied with your computer, the support software is contained on the hard disk drive. See the READ.ME file in the root directory of the hard disk to install the Mwave DSP support software.

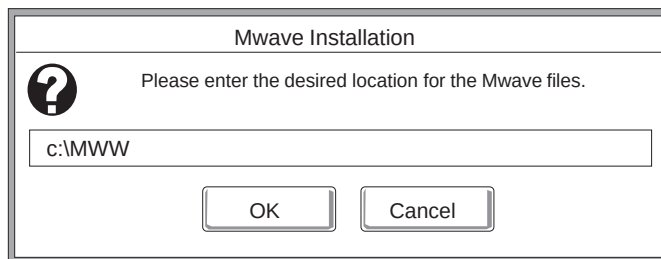
If the Mwave DSP Features Diskettes were supplied with your computer, install the Mwave DSP support software and MIDI sample files (if this is your first installation) as follows:

Warning:

Before you install the Mwave DSP support software, close all open applications.

- 1** Turn on the computer; then start Windows.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.
- 3** Insert the Mwave DSP Features Diskette 1 for Windows into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:SETUP; then press **Enter**.

The following screen, which enables you to specify the directory location of Mwave DSP support software, appears:



Installing Mwave DSP Support Software for Windows

5 If the directory is acceptable, press **Enter**. Otherwise, type the directory name; then press **Enter**.

6 Follow the instructions on the screen.

7 After the installation is complete, remove any diskette from the diskette drive; then restart Windows to activate the Mwave DSP support software.

If this is your first time to install the Mwave DSP Support Software, also install the MIDI sample files as follows:

8 Follow the same procedures from step 2 to step 7 on page 241; however, this time use the Mwave DSP Features Diskette 1 for MIDI (for Windows) instead of the Mwave DSP Features Diskette 1 for Windows.

You have completed the installation of the Mwave DSP support software for Windows.

If you are using MIDI equipment, go to “Installing the MIDI Port Device Driver for Windows” on page 242 before completing or continuing the installation with “Installing the Infrared Device Driver for Windows” on page 243.

Installing MIDI Port Device Driver for Windows

Installing the MIDI Port Device Driver for Windows

The computer has a MIDI port feature to connect a MIDI keyboard device or external synthesizer. To use the MIDI port, install the Mwave MIDI Port device driver as follows:

- 1** Select the **Main** window from the Windows Program Manager.
- 2** Select **Control Panel**; then select **Driver**.
- 3** Select **Add**; then select **Unlisted or Updated Driver**.
- 4** Select **OK**.
- 5** Type C:\MwW\MIDIPOINT.

MIDIPOINT is the subdirectory name where you have installed the Mwave software.

- 6** Select **Mwave MIDI Port Driver**; then select **OK**.

You have completed the installation of the Mwave Windows support software.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the Infrared Device Driver for Windows" on page 243.

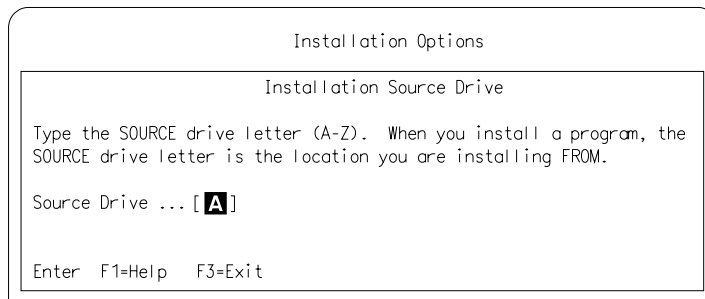
Installing the Infrared Device Driver for Windows

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Infrared device driver.

- 1** Turn on the computer; then go to the DOS command prompt.
- 2** Insert the Infrared Features diskette into the diskette drive.
- 3** Type A:UINSTALL and press **Enter**.

The following screen appears:



- 4** Press **Enter**; then follow the instructions on the screen.

Select **Install Windows ThinkPad Infrared Driver** when you are asked.

You have completed the installation of the Infrared device driver for Windows.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for Windows" on page 244.

Installing Enhanced Video Device Driver for Windows

Installing the Enhanced Video Device Driver for Windows

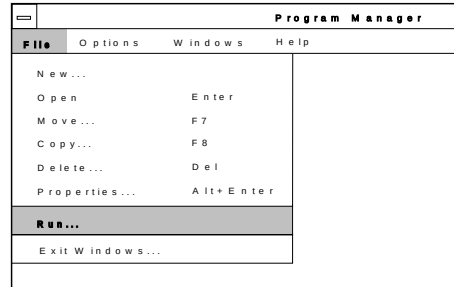
Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Enhanced Video device driver.

This section describes the installation of the Enhanced Video device driver for Windows, which enables the video in/out ports and smooth playback on Video for Windows or compatible software.

Install Video for Windows or compatible software; then do the following to install the Enhanced Video device driver:

- 1** Turn on the computer and start Windows.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- 3** Insert the Enhanced Video Device Drivers diskette for Windows into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:EVSETUP; then press **Enter** and follow the instructions on the screen.
- 5** After the installation is complete, remove the diskette and restart the system to activate the Enhanced Video Device Driver.

You have completed the installation of the Enhanced Video device drivers for Windows. To run the Video Capture and Playback functions, refer to the Video for Windows or compatible software manuals.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the MPEG Device Driver for Windows" on page 245.

Installing the MPEG Device Driver for Windows

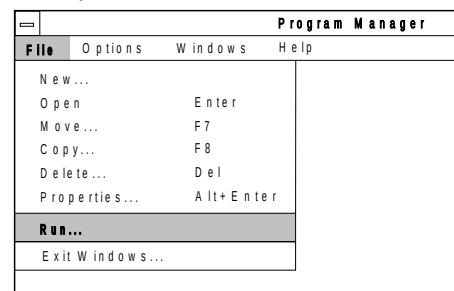
Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the MPEG device driver.

The MPEG device driver enables playback for MPEG motion videos, CD-I movies, and video CDs. To install the MPEG device driver:

1 Install the Microsoft Win32s driver.

- a) Turn on the computer and start Windows.
- b) Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- c) Insert the Microsoft Win32s Setup Disk 1 into the diskette drive.
- d) Type A:\SETUP and press **Enter**.
- e) Follow the instructions on the screen.
- f) After you have completed the installation, restart Windows.

Installing MPEG Device Driver for Windows

- 2** Click on **Control Panel** from the Main window.
- 3** Click on **Drivers**; then click on the **Add** button.
- 4** Select **Unlisted or Updated Driver**; then click on **OK**.
- 5** Insert the MPEG Device Driver diskette into the diskette drive of the computer.
- 6** Make sure the drive letter is A:; then click on **OK**.
- 7** Follow the instructions on the screen.

You have completed the installation of the MPEG device driver. If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with "Installing the IBM Video CD Player for Windows" on page 247.

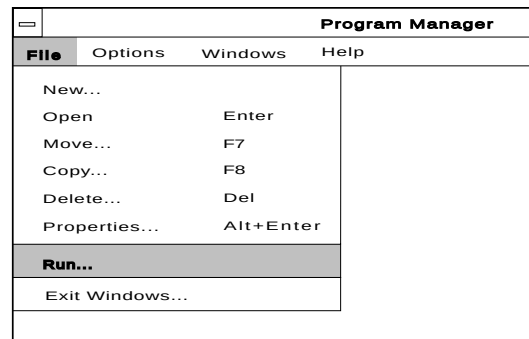
Installing the IBM Video CD Player for Windows

Note:

When installing an operating system, you need to install the Video CD Player.

This section describes the installation of the IBM Video CD Player for Windows, which enables playback of video CDs or CD-I movies with more options than with the Media player.

- 1** Turn on the computer and start Windows.
- 2** Select **File** from the Program Manager window; then select **Run...** from the pull-down menu.



- 3** Insert the IBM Video CD Player install diskette into the diskette drive.
- 4** Type A:SETUP; then press **Enter** and follow the instructions on the screen.

You have completed the installation of the IBM Video CD Player for Windows.

If you want to continue to install all device drivers, continue with “Installing the ThinkPad Display Driver for Windows” on page 248.

Installing ThinkPad Display Driver for Windows

Installing the ThinkPad Display Driver for Windows

If you did not install the display driver when Windows was installed (by following the procedures on page 233), you must install the ThinkPad display device driver. The display driver enables you to use screen resolutions from 640 by 480 to 1024 by 768 and colors from 256 to 16 million for the LCD and external display. (See page 197 for possible combinations of resolution and color.)

The display driver also takes advantage of the computer's video capability.

Before installation

Before you begin installing the display driver, set the display device mode to *LCD*: select the **Display** icon and then **LCD** in the ThinkPad Features program; or at the command prompt, type **PS2 SC LCD** and press **Enter**.

To install the ThinkPad device driver:

Note:

To exit Windows:

1. Double-click the Control Menu box in the upper left corner of the Program Manager window.
2. Click on the OK button to exit Windows.

- 1** Turn on the computer.
- 2** If Windows is running on your computer, exit Windows and switch to the DOS prompt.
- 3** Go to the Windows subdirectory and type **SETUP**; then press **Enter**.
- 4** Select **Display** from the Windows Setup menu; then select **Other (Requires disk...)**.
- 5** Insert the Video Features Diskette for Windows 3.1 into the diskette drive; then type **A:** and press **Enter**.
- 6** Select your desired resolution from the menu and press **Enter**. Follow the instructions on the screen.

You have completed the installation of the display driver for Windows.

Chapter 8. Solving Computer Problems

Computer problems can be caused by software, hardware, or both. You can diagnose and solve many problems with the assistance of the self-tests and system programs contained in *Easy-Setup*. If a hardware problem is detected by the self-tests, an error message is displayed.

The system programs can identify a problem or provide information for the service representative. Make a note of all error codes and give them to the service representative when you call for service. If the system programs cannot be loaded, the troubleshooting charts and other information will help you determine what corrective action to take.

Important

Use this chapter to test only *IBM* products. Non-IBM products can cause misleading error information or incorrect computer responses. When testing non-IBM products, refer to the instructions supplied with those products.

Commonly Asked Questions and Problems	251
Common Problems and Actions	251
Frequently Asked Questions and Answers	254
Testing the Computer	255
Troubleshooting Charts	257
Error Codes	257
LCD Problems	259
Screen Messages	261
Other General Problems	262
What If Testing Cannot Find the Problem?	264
Battery Power Problems	264
CD-ROM Drive Problems	265
Diskette Drive Problems	266
Enhanced Video Feature Problems	266
External Display Problems	267
Hibernation Problems	268
Infrared Communication Problems	268

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Keyboard, External Numeric Keypad, and Pointing Device Problems	270
Mwave DSP Feature Problems	271
Option Problems	273
PC Card Problems	274
Printer Problems	275
Software Problems	276
Getting Service	277
Listing Installed Options	278
Recording Identification Numbers	278
The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (in the U.S.A.) . .	279
Voice Technical Support	279
Online Housecall	279
ThinkPad EasyServ	279
International Warranty Service	279
Electronic Support Services	279
Ordering Information	280
The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (for European Countries)	281
Yours for a free trial period:	281
Join the HelpClub!	282

Commonly Asked Questions and Problems

This section provides:
Common problems and their corresponding actions.
Frequently asked questions and their answers.

Common Problems and Actions

Problems	Actions
My modem application does not work with the Mwave modem.	Verify that: Your application is using COM2 as a communication port. COM2 is assigned to the Mwave modem as a default. Your application's modem type is set to one of the following: – Mwave modem – Generic Hayes-type modem – Hayes SmartModem 2400 – Hayes modem – Hayes-compatible modem For more information: – <i>For OS/2 or Windows</i>, double-click on the Read me icon. – <i>For DOS</i>, see the README.TXT file in the MWD subdirectory.
My modem application does not work with the PC Card modem.	If the PC Card Director shows the PC Card modem status "Ready," add the following option switch in the CONFIG.SYS file: <i>For DOS:</i> IBMDSS 1.SYS /IO =x (or /IO1=x) <i>For OS/2:</i> IBM2SS 1.SYS /IO =x (or /IO1=x) Note: x shows the PCMCIA slot number (1, 2, or 12) on the computer and "/IO1=" shows the slot number on a Dock I, Dock II, or port replicator that is attached to the computer.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problems	Actions
My PC Card modem does not work.	Your computer is equipped with a built-in Mwave modem. If you want to use the PC Card modem instead of the Mwave modem, you need to release a communications port (COM port) for the PC Card modem. Do the following: <i>For OS/2 or Windows</i>, start the ThinkPad Setup program and release a COM port for your PC Card modem by: – Disabling the InfraRed Device in the Infrared section. – Disabling the Telephony Function in the DSP section. – Changing the COM port for the Telephony Function from COM2 to COM1. See page 38 to use the ThinkPad Setup program. <i>For DOS</i>, use the PS2 command to disable the telephony function or infrared port to release a COM port for the PC Card modem. For more information or the latest tips, refer to: – PC Card Problems on page 274 – READ.ME file and PCMCIA.CRD file in the THINKPAD subdirectory of the computer
I cannot use PC Cards other than the IBM ones in the OS/2 Warp environment.	If you do not have the PC Card device driver for OS/2 but you have one for DOS, your PC Card may run in the VDM (virtual DOS machine) environment. Refer to the "Virtual Card Services for OS/2" in the <i>OS/2 Warp User's Guide</i> for setting the VDM and the sample configuration files on the PCMCIA Device Driver Diskette for OS/2. (If the PCMCIA Device Driver Diskette for OS/2 did not come with the computer, create it using the Diskette Factory program.)
My computer does not show as good performance as I expected.	Performance varies depending on your hardware and software configurations such as memory size, swapper file size, or smart drive settings.
Error 2XX appears (memory error).	Make sure your memory card is correctly installed.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problems	Actions
A memory shortage or memory error occurs.	<i>When you are using DOS</i>, it is recommended that you use the DOS command MEM /C to review your DOS memory usage occasionally. And then: – Unload any unnecessary drivers from the CONFIG.SYS file. (For example, unload printer drivers if you do not use a printer.) – Reconfigure the UMB (upper memory block) using the DEVICEHIGH statement. – Use the multiple configuration setup for DOS (refer to the documents supplied with DOS). <i>When you are using Windows:</i> – Try the same actions as described for DOS. – Unload any unnecessary programs from the WIN.INI file (for example, FUELWIN for AC operations, LRGPTR for large cursor, and so on.)
The external display screen is blank.	Do the following: Make sure the display mode parameter of the ThinkPad Features program is set to CRT or Both. In the ThinkPad Features program, set the computer not to enter suspend mode when the LCD is closed.
The computer does not resume from suspend mode , or the suspend lamp stays on and the computer does not work.	The computer automatically enters suspend or hibernation mode when the battery pack is empty. Do one of the following: - Replace the battery pack with a fully charged one. - Connect the AC Adapter to the computer.
The computer does not enter suspend or hibernation mode .	Verify that: - If the computer is attached to Dock I, suspend mode is disabled. - If the computer is attached to Dock II, open the Docking Control utility and verify suspend and hibernation are not disabled. If either is disabled, enable it. - If the AC Adapter is used and the computer is communicating, suspend and hibernation modes are disabled. (See page 127.)
When using Windows, the cursor does not move after normal operation is resumed from one of the power-saving modes.	Make sure you have installed Windows with the APM option by following the procedures on page 233.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Frequently Asked Questions and Answers

Questions	Answers
How can I expand my hard disk space?	Most of the preloaded applications provide a way to delete and free hard disk space. Check whether or not the application you want to delete has its own delete icon.
How can I expand my memory?	See answers to memory questions on page 253.
How can I get diskettes for operating systems or device drivers?	You can create the operating systems diskettes or device driver diskettes by using the Diskette Factory program or any other backup programs. If you cannot use Diskette Factory program, do the following: In the U.S., Access the IBM PC Company BBS (see "Electronic Support Services" on page 279 to get a telephone number) to get the latest versions of device drivers diskettes. Purchase the operating systems diskettes or device drivers diskettes. Contact your IBM dealer or IBM marketing representative. (See page 279 or page 281 for IBM HelpClub information.)
How can I resolve any resource conflicts (for IRQ, COM port, and other settings) that have occurred after installing a new option or a new application?	See page 283 to get information about any hardware resources already used by devices in the computer.

Testing the Computer

The following shows a basic way to test the computer:

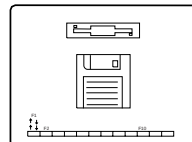
1 Turn on the computer.

The power-on self-test (POST) runs automatically. If the test ends without detecting an error, one of the following occurs:

The operating system or application screen appears.

A password prompt appears on the screen, if a password has been set. Type the correct password and press **Enter**.

The **Diskette** and **F1** prompts (shown below) appear.



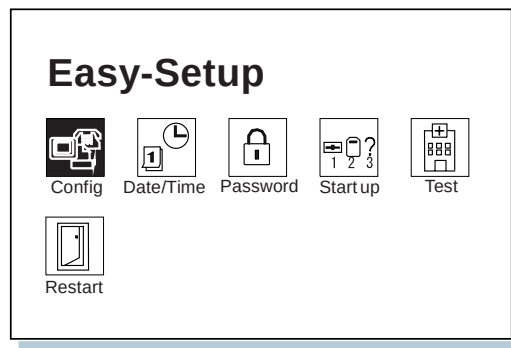
This means no operating system is installed in your computer. Install it now.

Did one of these screens appear?

Yes Turn off the computer and continue with step 2.

No Go to page 257.

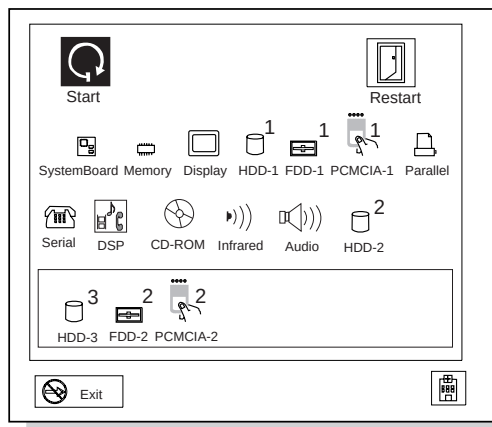
2 Press and hold **F1**; then turn on the computer to start Easy-Setup. Hold **F1** until the following *Easy-Setup* menu appears.



What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

3 Did the *Easy-Setup* menu appear on the screen?

Yes The computer has successfully completed the POST (internal tests), and the system programs have been loaded. To start the test programs, select the **Test** icon; then select the **Start** icon or press **Enter**.



If the computer did not beep, the speaker is not working correctly. Have the computer serviced. If you are not sure about the beep, turn off the computer; then turn it on again and repeat step 2 on page 255.

If you cannot go beyond the first screen, have the computer serviced.

If an error is detected, the character X appears at the left of the affected device, and an error code appears below it. Record the error code and have the computer serviced.

If the test does not find a problem but one still exists, find the problem in the troubleshooting charts on page 257.

No Return to step 2 on page 255 and start Easy-Setup again. If you still cannot start Easy-Setup, find the problem in the troubleshooting charts starting on page 257.

Troubleshooting Charts

In the charts, x can be any character.

Error Codes

Screen Message	Action
I9990301 I9990302 I9990305 Note: Incorrect connection of the hard disk drive can cause these error codes to appear.	The computer cannot find the startup drive. 1. Turn off the computer. 2. Press and hold F1; then turn on the computer to start Easy-Setup. Hold F1 until the Main Menu appears. 3. Select the Start up icon. If you are unable to set the startup sequence, have the computer serviced. 4. Check the list of devices on the Set Startup Sequence screen. Is the default drive in the startup sequence? Yes Exit this screen, and turn off the computer. No Select the Reset icon. 5. Is an operating system installed? Yes Go to step 7. No Install the operating system in your computer. 6. After the operating system is installed, turn off the computer. 7. Turn on the computer. If the same screen message appears, have the computer serviced.
I99xxxxx	Have the computer serviced.
111	If you are using a port replicator or an expansion unit, disconnect it; then reconnect it. If there is still a problem, have the computer serviced.
158	A hard disk drive without a hard disk password is installed when a supervisor password is set. 1. Press Enter. The password menu in Easy-Setup appears. 2. Select the Supervisor icon. 3. Press Enter. The same password as the supervisor password is set for the hard disk password on the hard disk drive.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Screen Message	Action
159	The hard disk password differs from the supervisor password. 1. Turn off the computer; then turn it on again. 2. Change the hard disk password to the supervisor password at the hard disk password prompt.
16x or 17x	Follow the instructions on the screen.
174	There is a device configuration error. Check that the hard disk drive and the diskette drive are installed firmly in the connectors.
184	The entered password is invalid. Turn off the computer and wait at least 5 seconds; then turn it on again and type the correct password.
190	The computer has turned off because of a critical low-battery condition. Connect the AC Adapter to the computer and charge the battery pack.
195	The system configuration before and after hibernation mode differs, and the computer cannot resume normal operation. Change the system configuration to what it was before the computer entered hibernation mode. If the memory size is changed, re-create the hibernation file (see page 129).
196	The computer cannot read the hibernation file. Have the computer serviced.
2xx	Verify that the DIMM option is correctly installed.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Screen Message	Action
30x	Turn off the computer and all attached devices. Turn on the computer first; then turn on the attached devices. If the computer has an external keyboard connected, verify that: 1. The external keyboard is connected to the correct side of the keyboard/mouse connector (see page 193). 2. The keyboard/mouse connector is correctly connected to the computer. If the preceding items are correct, disconnect the keyboard/mouse connector from the computer and verify that the operation of the system keyboard is correct. If the system keyboard works correctly, have the keyboard/mouse connector or the external keyboard serviced. Test the computer by selecting the Start icon. – If the computer stops during testing and does not continue, have the computer serviced. – If the tests do not find a problem but one still exists, find the problem in “What If Testing Cannot Find the Problem?” on page 264.

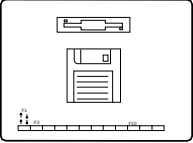
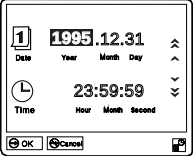
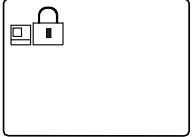
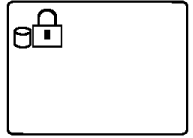
LCD Problems

Problem	Action
The screen is blank and there are no beeps. Note: If you are not sure about the beeps, turn the computer off; then turn it on again, and listen to the beeps.	Verify that: The battery pack is correctly installed. The AC Adapter is connected to the computer and the power cord is plugged into a working electrical outlet. The computer power switch is turned on. If the preceding items are correct and the screen remains blank, have the computer serviced.
The screen is blank and there is one beep. Note: If you are using an external display, go to “External Display Problems” on page 267.	If a power-on password is set, type the correct password and press Enter (see page 134). If a power-on password is not set, verify that the brightness control on the computer is correctly adjusted. If the preceding items are correct and the screen remains blank, have the computer serviced.

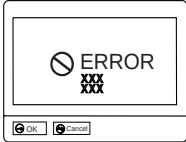
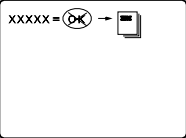
What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Action
The screen is blank and there is a continuous beep, or two or more beeps.	Have the computer serviced.
Only the cursor appears.	Have the computer serviced.
xxxxx KB OK appears and the computer halts.	Have the computer serviced.
The screen is unreadable or distorted.	Verify that the ThinkPad display driver was installed correctly. Verify that Display in the Windows Setup screen is set to your display resolution type (see page 233). If these are correct, test the computer. If the test ends without an error, have the computer serviced.
Incorrect characters appear on the screen.	Verify that operating systems and application programs have been installed and configured correctly. If so, have the computer serviced.
The screen stays on although the power switch is turned off.	Press the Power Shutdown switch on the rear of the computer with the tip of a pen to turn off the computer; then turn the computer on again.
The computer goes into suspend mode immediately after the POST. (The suspend lamp turns on.)	Verify that: - The battery pack is charged. - Keyboard is firmly closed. - When the external display is attached to the computer, the Will not suspend even if LCD is closed option (in the Suspend/Resume options of the ThinkPad Features program) is enabled. - The environmental temperature is in an acceptable range. Refer to "Specifications" on page 327. If the preceding items are correct, have the computer serviced.
Error 190 appears and the computer immediately turns off.	The battery pack is low in power. Connect the AC Adapter to the computer, or replace the battery pack with a fully charged one.
Missing, discolored, or bright dots appear on the screen at all times.	The computer LCD contains more than 1 440 000 thin-film transistors (TFTs). A small number of missing, discolored, or bright dots on the screen is an intrinsic characteristic of TFT LCD technology and is not an LCD defect.

Screen Messages

Message	Action
Diskette and F1 prompts. 	Verify that hard disk drive is correctly installed. Or, verify that the self-starting diskette is inserted correctly (with the label up and metal-shutter end first) in the diskette drive. If so, press F1. If both prompts remain, have the computer serviced.
Error 163 appearing with the date and time screen.  The date and time screen appears when neither the date nor the time is set in the computer.	Set the date and time by typing or clicking on the ▲ or ▼ to set the numbers; then click on the OK button.
Power-on password prompt. 	A power-on or supervisor password was set. To use the computer, type the correct password and press Enter (see page 134). If the power-on-password is not accepted, a supervisor password might have been set. Type the supervisor password and press Enter. If there is still a problem, have the computer serviced.
Hard disk password prompt. 	A hard disk password was set. To use the computer, type the correct password and press Enter (see page 134). If there is still a problem, have the computer serviced.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Message	Action
Test menu. 	Select the Start icon and follow the instructions to test your system. If you cannot go beyond the first screen, have the computer serviced. If the computer stops during testing and does not continue, have the computer serviced. If testing does not find a problem but one still exists, find the problem in "What If Testing Cannot Find the Problem?" on page 264.
POST error prompt. 	An error was found during the POST. Press Enter; then select Start from the test menu to run the test. If the test ends with an error, make a note of the error code and have the computer serviced.
Error prompt. 	Turn off the computer and start Easy-Setup; then select Test to test the computer. You can start the operating system by pressing F1 instead and ignore the error.
A screen or message that is not listed.	Turn off the computer and start Easy-Setup; then select Test to test the computer. If you cannot start Easy-Setup, have the computer serviced.

Other General Problems

Problem	Cause or Action
The computer enters suspend mode automatically.	The computer enters suspend mode automatically when the processor temperature is higher than a certain degree. This is not a defect.
The computer performance is getting worse in an environment where the temperature is higher than the product specifications. (See "Specifications" on page 327.)	Processor speed may decrease if the computer is used in a high-temperature environment. This is not a defect.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Cause or Action
The computer has problems such as a broken keylock or a defective indicator lamp.	Have the computer serviced.
The computer does not turn off with the power switch.	If the suspend lamp is turned on, connect the AC Adapter or install a fully charged battery pack in the computer; then resume operations. If there is still a problem, press the Power Shutdown switch on the rear of the computer with the tip of a pen to turn off the computer.
An application locks up or the computer does not accept any input.	Press the Power Shutdown switch on the rear of the computer with the tip of a pen to turn off the computer; then turn the computer on again.
The computer does not start from a diskette.	Check that the startup sequence is set to start the computer from the diskette drive (see page 49).
Keyboard cannot be opened.	Check that a Kensington lock or compatible lock is not in use.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

What If Testing Cannot Find the Problem?

If the test programs do not find the problem, use these troubleshooting charts:

Battery Power Problems

Problem	Action
The battery pack starts discharging automatically, even if the AC Adapter is connected.	When the AC Adapter is connected and the remaining power in the installed battery pack is less than a certain amount, discharging and then charging of the battery pack starts automatically.
When you are using OS/2 or Windows, the message, "Please discharge battery" appears on the screen.	Discharge the battery pack; then recharge it (see page 119).
The battery status indicator has turned off although a battery pack is installed in the computer.	The over-current protection device inside the battery pack has been activated. Wait for several hours and try to use it again. If there is still a problem, replace the battery pack or have the computer serviced.
The battery pack cannot be fully charged in 3 hours by the power-off charging method.	The battery pack might be over-discharged. 1. Turn off the computer. 2. Make sure that the over-discharged battery pack is in the computer. 3. Connect the AC Adapter to the computer and let it charge. If the battery pack cannot be fully charged in 24 hours, use the new battery pack. If a Quick Charger (available as an option) is available, use it to charge the over-discharged battery pack.
The battery operating time indicated by the Fuel-Gauge program or the battery status indicator is much longer or shorter than actual operating time.	Repeat discharging and charging of the battery pack at least three times.
The operating time for a fully charged battery pack becomes shorter.	Repeat discharging and charging of the battery pack three to six times. If there is still a problem, use a new battery pack.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Action
The computer does not operate with a fully charged battery pack installed.	The protective function in the battery pack might be activated. Turn off the computer for 1 minute to reset the protective function, and then turn it back on again.

CD-ROM Drive Problems

Problem	Action
CD-ROM will not operate and the CD-ROM lamp does not light.	Verify that: 1. The computer power is turned on. 2. The device driver has been installed correctly. (See page 212.) 3. The compact disc is placed in the tray with the label side up.
The device driver will not load or cannot be found.	1. Check the system configuration file. See the README.DOS or README.OS2 file on the CD-ROM Device Driver Diskette. 2. Verify that the device driver and support software have been copied to the correct directory on the hard disk. 3. If you are using DOS, refer to your DOS documentation and check the LASTDRIVE statement in your CONFIG.SYS file.
The compact disc cannot be read.	Verify that: 1. The compact disc is not dirty. Clean it with a CD-ROM cleaner kit. 2. The compact disc is not defective. Try another compact disc. 3. The compact disc is not ISO-9660/High Sierra Standard.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Diskette Drive Problems

Problem	Action
The diskette drive in use icon stays on.	If there is a diskette in the drive, verify that: – There is nothing wrong with the diskette. Try a backup copy if you have one. – The diskette is inserted correctly (label up and metal-shutter end first) in the diskette drive. – The diskette contains the necessary files to start the system. – There is nothing wrong with your application program (see page 276). If the preceding items are correct, have the computer serviced. If there is no diskette in the drive, have the computer serviced.

Enhanced Video Feature Problems

Problem	Cause and action
The Enhanced Video function or the MPEG function does not work.	Verify that: The Enhanced Video is enabled as follows: 1. Select Enhanced Video in the ThinkPad Features program. 2. Click on Enable for the Enhanced Video. 3. Click on Advanced. No resource conflicts (IRQ, I/O address, or DMA conflict) occur: 1. Select Enhanced Video in the ThinkPad Features program. 2. Click on Enable for Enhanced Video. 3. Click on IRQ or DMA and check that no hardware conflict exists. If you find any conflicts with other devices, change the value to avoid any conflicts.

External Display Problems

Problem	Action
The screen is blank.	Verify that: The power cord for the external display is plugged into a working electrical outlet and into the external display. The external display is turned on and the brightness and contrast controls are adjusted. The signal cable for the external display is plugged into the external-display connector on the computer. Some signal cables might not fit into the external-display connector because of the connector type. The external display (CRT) is selected as the display device using the Fn key function (see page 51) or the ThinkPad Features program (see page 38). The suspend option to enter suspend mode when the LCD is closed is disabled. (Click on the Battery icon in the ThinkPad Features program; then follow the screen.) Turn off the computer; then turn it on. If the preceding items are correct and the screen of the external display remains blank, run the display tests described in the instructions supplied with the external display. If the tests show the external display is OK, have the computer serviced.
The screen is unreadable or distorted.	Verify that: The ThinkPad display driver is installed correctly (see page 203). The Device Driver parameters in the Display setting screen are set to your display resolution and color type (see page 196). To change or set up the external display, see "Attaching an External Display" on page 194. If these are correct, run the tests described in the instructions supplied with the external display. If the tests show the external display is OK, have the computer serviced.
Wrong characters appear on the screen.	Verify that operating systems and application programs have been installed and configured correctly. If so, have the computer serviced.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Hibernation Problems

Problem	Action
The computer does not enter hibernation mode with the Fn+F12 key combination.	Did you create the hibernation file? You must create the hibernation file before entering hibernation mode. 1. Select the Power icon in the ThinkPad Features program. 2. Click on the More... button. 3. Click on the Enable Hibernation button. Are you using PC Cards? If you are using one of the IBM communication PC Cards listed on page 131, the computer cannot enter hibernation mode. To enter hibernation mode, stop the communication program, and then remove the PC Card or turn off the power to the PCMCIA slot using the PC Card Director.

Infrared Communication Problems

Problem	Action
The computer cannot communicate with other devices using the infrared port on the computer.	Verify that: Power is supplied to the infrared port by the ThinkPad Features program (see page 38). The infrared function is enabled and other choices are set correctly in the ThinkPad Setup menu in the ThinkPad Features program (see page 38). The communicating device is using an equivalent communication speed. The infrared ports are cleaned and do not have any spots. No cable or electrical device is between the computer and the communicating device. The distance and angle between the computer and the communicating device are correct.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Action
Incorrect data is sent between the computer and device.	Verify that: The distance and angle between the devices are correct. The communicating device is using an equivalent communication speed. There is no device radiating infrared rays, such as remote-controlled devices or wireless headphones, near the computer or device. Direct sunlight or fluorescent lamps are not near the computer or device.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Keyboard, External Numeric Keypad, and Pointing Device Problems

Problem	Action
All or some keys on the system keyboard do not work.	If the problem occurs immediately after the computer returns to normal operation from suspend mode, enter the power-on password. If a power-on password is set, you must enter the password. If the external keyboard is connected, the numeric keypad on the system keyboard will not work. If the external numeric keypad or the mouse is connected: 1. Turn off the computer. 2. Remove the external numeric keypad or the mouse. 3. Turn on the computer and try using the keyboard again. If the keyboard problem is resolved, check the connection of the external numeric keypad, external keyboard, or the mouse. If there is still a problem, have the computer serviced.
The pointer drifts when the computer is turned on, or after resuming normal operation. —or— During computer operation, the pointer drifts when not using the TrackPoint III.	Drifting is a characteristic of the TrackPoint III and is not a defect. The drifting occurs for several seconds under the following conditions: When the computer is turned on. When resuming normal operation. When the TrackPoint III is pressed for a long period of time. When the environmental temperature changes. Do not touch the TrackPoint III until the pointer stops moving.
The mouse or pointing device does not work.	Verify that the mouse or pointing-device cable is securely connected to the computer. Try using the TrackPoint III. If the TrackPoint III works, suspect the externally attached pointing device. If you are using Windows, make sure Computer is set as MS-DOS System with APM. See page 233. If you are using a mouse that is not compatible with the IBM PS/2 Mouse, disable the TrackPoint III using the ThinkPad Features program. 1. For OS/2 and Windows, see page 39. Select Setup, Keyboard/Pointing Device; then click on Disable for the TrackPoint III. 2. For DOS, see page 42.
All or some keys on the external numeric keypad do not work.	Verify that the external numeric keypad is correctly connected to the computer.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Action
All or some keys on the external keyboard do not work.	Verify that: The keyboard connector is connected to the correct side of the keyboard/mouse connector. The keyboard/mouse connector is correctly connected to the computer. If the preceding items are correct, disconnect the keyboard/mouse connector from the computer and verify that the operation of the system keyboard is correct. If the system keyboard works, have the keyboard/mouse connector or the external keyboard serviced.
A number appears when you type an alphabetic character.	The Numeric Lock function is on. Press and hold Shift ; then press NumLk .

Mwave DSP Feature Problems

Problem	Cause and action
Sound Blaster support cannot be enabled.	This is probably because Mwave is being used for other functions, such as the modem. Try disabling another function; then type MWGAMES ON MIN. The MIN option enables Sound Blaster support using a minimum amount of Mwave resources.
DOS games work slowly in a Windows session.	Some DOS games run slower in a Windows DOS session than in native DOS. Check the documentation of your game for special instructions about improving performance. Configure your computer to use the VGA display driver rather than a higher resolution or less efficient driver. Determine if your game allows you to turn off "background music" and only play special effects.
A Windows error message states that no MIDI device is available.	This is often because the DSP resources have been used up. Close an application that is using DSP, and retry the failing function.
A Windows error message states that no WAV device is available.	This is often because the DSP resources have been used up. Close an application that is using DSP, and retry the failing function.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Cause and action
The modem does not work correctly.	Verify that: - The modem/fax port is securely installed. - The modem is correctly identified in your communication program. This is often caused by a conflict between communication port addresses or interrupt assignments, or both. For more detail, see also modem problems on page 251.
A modem error occurred.	Refer to the command reference in the Mwave ThinkPad window.
A modem application is not working.	Verify that: - You did not close the modem window instead of minimizing it. - The modem is set to support the speed you are trying to use.
A speaker phone application does not work.	Verify that you disabled the Audio button in the Audio Control.
The computer cannot receive incoming calls from the speaker phone or the modem.	Verify that the telephone plug is correctly attached (see page 187).
Other problems.	The following is a list of failures that can cause other problems. - A compatibility problem exists between the Mwave feature and one or more other adapters in the system. To isolate a compatibility problem, remove other adapters from your system and rerun the diagnostics while these adapters are removed. - The telephone cable configuration is not correct for your application. - The telephone cable is defective. - The telephone is defective. - The audio cable configuration is not correct for your application. - The audio cable is defective. - The audio equipment is defective.

Option Problems

Problem	Action
An IBM option that was just installed does not work.	Verify that: - The option is designed for the computer. - The option has been installed correctly by following the instructions supplied with the option. - Other installed options or cables are not loose. - No I/O address or interrupt level conflict has occurred. Use the System Info of the ThinkPad Features program. If the test programs for the option did not find the problem, have the computer and option serviced.
An IBM option that used to work no longer works.	Verify that: - All the option hardware and cable connections are securely connected. - If the option came with its own test instructions, use those instructions to test the option. If the preceding items are correct and the test programs did not find the problem, have the computer and option serviced.
The serial port does not work.	Ensure that Serial port is set to Serial_1 , Serial_2 , Serial_3 , or Serial_4 in the ThinkPad Features program.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

PC Card Problems

Problem	Action
Error messages appear when loading the Socket Services or other PCMCIA device drivers.	Is the PCMCIA controller chip ready to be used? Check if the PCMCIA device is ready by using Easy-Setup or the ThinkPad Features program.
PC Card Director does not recognize your PC Card.	- Are you using the EMS driver under DOS? When using the EMS driver, you must set the correct value for the /MA=mmm-nnn parameter in the Resource Map Utility. In the EMS driver, check the UMB area used for PCMCIA under the X=mmm-nnn parameter; then use that range to set the /MA parameter in the Resource Map Utility. - Does your PC Card support PCMCIA Standard Release 2.0 or later? If not, you cannot use PC Card Director. - Is your PC Card working? If your PC Card has its own diagnostic instructions, use those instructions to test it.
The PC Card is recognized by PC Card Director, but does not become "Ready."	- Is the PC Card enabler installed? Refer to the manuals supplied with your PC Card. - Are you using the EMS driver under DOS? When using the EMS driver, you must set the correct value for the /MA=mmm-nnn parameter in the Resource Map Utility. In the EMS driver, check the UMB area used for PCMCIA under the X=mmm-nnn parameter; then use that range to set the /MA parameter in the Resource Map Utility. If you are using Windows, also set the value for the EMEXCLUDE= parameter in the SYSTEM.INI file. - Are the resources for the PC Card correctly reserved? Refer to "Checking the Allocated Resources for the PC Card" on page 303.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Problem	Action
The PC Card is shown as "Ready," but does not work correctly.	1. Make sure the resources reserved for the PC Card do not conflict with those for other system devices. Refer to "Avoiding PC Card Resource Conflicts" on page 305. 2. Make sure the resources reserved for the PC Card match the settings in the application program. If you are using a modem card, check the COM number, I/O port address, and IRQ level. If you are using a network card, check the I/O port address, IRQ level, and memory window address. To check the resources assigned to the PC Card, click on the Status button in the PC Card Director program. 3. If you are using an I/O PC Card: The PC Card might work if you add the following in the CONFIG.SYS file: IBMDSS 1.SYS /IO =x Where x is a slot number.

Printer Problems

Problem	Action
The printer does not work.	Verify that: The printer is turned on and ready to print. The printer signal cable is connected to the correct connector on the computer. (For the location of the printer connector, see "parallel connector" on page 6.) If the preceding items are correct and the printer still does not work, run the tests described in the printer manual. If the tests show that the printer is OK, have the computer serviced.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Software Problems

Problem	Action
An application program does not work correctly.	To determine if a problem is caused by the software, verify that: - Your computer has the minimum memory required to use the software. Refer to the manuals supplied with the software to verify this. - The software is designed to operate with your computer. - Other software works correctly with your computer. - The software you are using works correctly with another computer. If you have received any error messages when using the application program, refer to the manuals supplied with the software for a description of the messages and a solution to the problem. If the preceding items are correct and there is still a problem, contact your IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative for help.

What If Your Computer Does Not Work?

Getting Service

If you need further assistance, call your IBM authorized reseller or IBM marketing representative.

When requesting service, describe the error message or problem to the service representative. Error messages can help identify what service action is required and help the service representative provide quick and efficient service.

Important

During the warranty period, you may be responsible for repair costs if the product damage was due to misuse, accident, modification, unsuitable physical or operating environment, or improper maintenance by you.

For your convenience, write the service phone numbers here.



Getting Service

Listing Installed Options

When requesting repair service, you might need to know which options you have in your system. Check or write the names of your options below.

DIMM
(4MB, 8MB, or 16MB)
_____MB Hard Disk Drive

Battery Pack

Option in the UltraBay

Internal CD-ROM Drive
or Diskette Drive

PC Cards

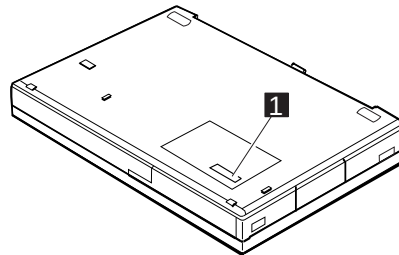
Recording Identification Numbers

The following information is needed when requesting repair services:

IBM Product Name	ThinkPad 760CD
Machine Type	_____
Serial Number	_____

The machine type and serial number 1 are located on the bottom of the computer.

The machine type has a prefix of **Type**.
The serial number has a prefix of **S/N**.



The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (in the U.S.A.)

HelpWare Support Family offerings get you fast, accurate answers to questions about your IBM ThinkPad. HelpWare also provides you with access to a wide variety of other services to assist you in getting the most out of your new computer.

Voice Technical Support

We will answer your hardware and preloaded operating system questions regarding setup, usage, and problem determination. We are here when you need us, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Online Housecall

An IBM technician can remotely access your ThinkPad, diagnose the problem, and make the correction quickly and easily (modem required).

ThinkPad EasyServ

A Federal Express courier will pick up your ThinkPad anywhere in the U.S., deliver it to an IBM mobile repair facility, and return the repaired machine to the location of your choice. In most cases we will have it repaired and on its way back to you within only eight hours of receipt. Courier charges in both directions are paid by IBM. Ask about our overnight repair option!

International Warranty Service

Register your ThinkPad to receive warranty service worldwide, whether you travel or relocate, wherever IBM or IBM resellers sell and service your ThinkPad products. Call to receive your International Warranty Service Certificate today.

Electronic Support Services

Online Services

Check out our public messaging areas, scheduled electronic conferences, and searchable databases on Prodigy, CompuServe, and America Online. You may also find reference diskettes, software patches and fixes, device drivers, and support documentation on the Internet (site address is <ftp.pcco.ibm.com>).

Getting Service

IBM Bulletin Board Dial 1-919-517-0001 to download software options catalogs, product reference guides, shareware, and software device drivers.

IBM Automated Fax System

Product announcement letters, marketing brochures, hardware and software tips, service information, and more are available by fax. Simply choose the automated fax system option when you call.

HelpWare offers the following additional services both during and after the warranty period.

Support Line

Enhanced PC Support
Network and Server Support
Personal Computer Software Assistance

Consult Line Consulting services from IBM experts

Custom Services

LAN Startup Services
Connectivity Services

Warranty and Repair Service

Product warranty and post-warranty maintenance options available

Ordering Information

For additional HelpWare Support Family information or to purchase any of the listed services, please call us at 1-800-772-2227. To receive information by fax, just choose the automated fax system option and request document #11175.

The IBM HelpClub: Another Great Choice (for European Countries)

Yours for a free trial period:

Helpware

What's great about the HelpClub[†] is that once you're a member you get *Helpware*[†]. If you intend to use your new ThinkPad at home or for business, Helpware provides a complete range of services designed to help you get the most out of your new computer. If you work for a large company, Helpware can complement your own PC support service—for example, by providing help after your company service has closed for the day.

When you register, Helpware offers you a full range of services, including the following: **Helpline: helpful advice, day or night** First and foremost, you've got access to Helpline — IBM's customer-friendly, round-the-clock technical support and troubleshooting service, available just by picking up the phone. Complete peace of mind 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

Helpware Magazine: hints and tips for all

With your free membership in the HelpClub, you receive a free subscription to *Helpware* magazine. We like to say it's one of the best PC magazines around, and you don't have to take our word for it. It has already won two publishing awards, and 8 out of 10 HelpClub members tell us it's the only PC magazine they need to read. Helpware is attractively produced, packed with information, and written in plain English, not technical gobbledegook.

HelpClub Privileges: lots of specials for members

HelpClub is an exclusive club for IBM users. You can become a member for a free trial period to receive special offerings.

[†] The Helpware and the HelpClub free offers are subject to continued availability and may vary or may not be offered in all countries. Check with your local IBM marketing representative for details.

Getting Service

Helpware is also a source of special deals for IBM customers, providing an exclusive collection of offers and discounts.

Join the HelpClub!

Call your country number below during office hours:

Austria	222 21145 7575
Belgium	02/542.5360
Denmark	45 93 45 45 lokal 4600
Finland	9800-6100
France	16-38 55 20 39
Germany	0231-9748-405
Italy	1678 36019
Luxembourg	02/542.5360
Netherlands	020 513 4700
Norway	66 99 95 95
Spain	(91) 563 10 01
Sweden	020-55 55 55
Switzerland	155 46 46
United Kingdom	0628 895222

In other countries, contact your local IBM office for service information.

Appendix A. Avoiding Hardware Conflicts

This appendix describes how to avoid system resource conflicts by listing the default and optional hardware settings. It also describes how to do a network remote program load and how to start the computer from an ATA PC Card.

List of System Resources

When options such as the AT adapter or application programs are installed, the system might not operate correctly because of conflicting setting for IRQ (interrupt) levels, I/O addresses, DMA channels, and memory addresses.

To avoid these conflicts, you must know the hardware requirements, such as IRQ level and I/O addresses, for each option and program as shown in their manuals. Then you must check the current resource allocations for the computer and the Dock I or Dock II, and select the available resource values by using the ThinkPad Features program (see page 38).

Avoiding Hardware Conflicts

The following table summarizes the available system resources for the computer and the ThinkPad Dock II. Values in parentheses are alternative values that are selectable in the **ThinkPad Features** program or application programs.

System Resources	IRQ	Memory Address (Hex)	I/O Address (Hex)	DMA Channel
Timer	0	none	0040–0043	none
Keyboard	1	none	0060, 0064	none
Serial Port	disabled (or 3, 4)	none	03F8–03FF (or 02F8–02FF)	none
Parallel Port	disabled (or 5, 7)	none	03BC–03BE, 07BC–07BE (or 0378–037F, 0778–077A, 0278–027F, 0678–067A)	0, 1, 3, disabled
Infrared Port	4 (or 3, 5, 10, 11, 15, disabled)	none	01A0–01A7 (or 01B0–01B7, 01C0–01C7, 01D0–01D7) 02E8–02EF (or 03F8–03FF, 02F8–02FF, 03E8–03EF)	0 and 3 or disable
Diskette Controller	6	none	03F0–03F7	2
Video Controller	none	A0000–BFFFF	03B4–03B5, 03C0–03CF, 03D4–03D5, 03D8–03D9, 43C6–43C9, 46E8	none
Enhanced Video/MPEG	9 (or 5, 7, 10, 11, 15, disabled)	none	FEE8, F000–F047 (or F080–F0C7, F400–F447, F480–F4C7, F800–F847, F880–F8C7, FC00–FC47, FC80–FCC7)	6 (or 5, 7)
Mwave DSP Device	10 (or 5, 7, 11, 15, disabled)	none	4E30–4E3F, 0030–003F, 8E30–8E3F, CE30–CE3F	7 (or 0, 1, 6)
Sound Blaster	5 (or 7, 10, 11, disabled)	none	0220–022F, 0240–024F	1 (or 0, 6, 7)
MIDI	5 (7, 10, 11, disabled)	none	0330–0332 (or 0300–0302)	none
Modem	3 (or 4, disabled)	none	03F8–02F8, 03E8–02E8	none
Hard Disk Drive	14	none	01F0–01F7, 03F6–03F7	none
Hard Disk Drive in UltraBay	15	none	0170–0177, 0376–0377	none
CD-ROM Drive	15	none	0170–0177, 0376–0377	none

Avoiding Hardware Conflicts

System Resources	IRQ	Memory Address (Hex)	I/O Address (Hex)	DMA Channel
Joystick Port	none	none	0200–0207	none
PCMCIA Controller	none	none	03E0–03E3	none
PC Card	(Depends on the type of PC Card)	(Depends on the type of PC Card)	(Depends on the type of PC Card)	none
Real Time Clock	8	none	0070–0071	none
TrackPoint III or Mouse	12	none	0060, 0064	none
Math Coprocessor Exception	13	none	none	none
Options in Dock I or Dock II SCSI Controller	9 (or 5, 7, 10, 11, 15)	DC000–DFFFF	340–35F	none
AD/VC Adapter	none	none	92E9	none
Notes: Selected values are assigned to a serial port and a parallel port of the computer. Selectable in the ThinkPad Features program or PS2.EXE. VL-Bus master is used. Sound Blaster and MIDI share the same IRQ. Select an IRQ and the memory addresses with a jumper and switch on the system board of the Dock I or Dock II. See “Using SCSI Controller and Support Software” in the <i>Dock I User's Guide</i> or <i>Dock II User's Guide</i> . Do not select Disabled when OS/2 is used.				

Avoiding Hardware Conflicts

Avoiding System Resource Conflicts When Using PC Cards

When you do a network remote program load (RPL) or start the computer from a PC Card, you must make sure that the system resources used by the PC Card do not conflict with the resources used by other devices.

Doing a Network Remote Program Load

To do a network remote program load (RPL):

- 1** Using the PS2 command or ThinkPad Features program, check that there is no conflict between the system resources used by the PC Card and by other devices.

The following are the system resources for a token-ring PC Card and an Ethernet PC Card:

Token-Ring PC Card

IRQ 9
I/O Address (HEX) 0A20–0A23
Memory Address (HEX) CC000–CDFFF, D8000–DBFFF

IRQ9 is the default setting used by the Enhanced Video. To do a token-ring PC Card RPL, change the IRQ for the Enhanced Video or disable it with the ThinkPad Features program or the EV PS2 command (see page 317).

Ethernet PC Card

IRQ 5
I/O Address (HEX) 0300–031F
Memory Address (HEX) D0000–D1FFF, D4000–D7FFF

IRQ5 is the default setting used by the SoundBlaster emulation. To do an Ethernet PC Card RPL, change the IRQ for the SoundBlaster emulation or disable it with the ThinkPad Features program or the SB PS2 command (see page 319).

- 2** Start Easy-Setup and select the **Start Up** icon.

3 Select the **Network** icon.

A window appears at the bottom of the screen for you to select the RPL speed.

4 If you are using a token-ring card, select **4** (4Mbps) or **16** (16Mbps) for the RPL speed.

If you are using a network card other than a token-ring card, you can select either RPL speed.

5 Click on **OK** or press **Enter**; then restart the computer.

Starting the Computer from an ATA PC Card

To start the computer from an ATA PC Card:

1 Using the PS2 command or ThinkPad Features program, check that there is no conflict between the system resources used by the PC Card and by other devices.

The following is the system resources for an ATA card:

IRQ	15
I/O Address (HEX)	0170–0177

IRQ15 is the default setting used by the UltraBay of the computer. To start the computer from the ATA card, change the IRQ for the UltraBay or disable it with the ThinkPad Features program or the IDE2 PS2 command (see page 318).

2 Start Easy-Setup and select the **Start Up** icon.**3** Select the **PCMCIA** icon.

You cannot set the PC Card (PCMCIA icon) to follow the hard disk drive of the computer (HDD-1 icon). If the **HDD-1** icon is already in the drive-startup sequence, click on the **Reset** icon; then set the sequence.

4 Click on **OK** or press **Enter**; then restart the computer.



Avoiding Hardware Conflicts



Appendix B. Advanced Information for PC Cards

This appendix describes the Auto Configurator program, which automatically enables the PC Card without the device driver supplied with your PC Card being installed. It also describes other information related to using PC Cards.

Auto Configurator for PC Card Director

Note:

When installing an operating system, install the PCMCIA device driver that is on the PC Card Director diskettes to use the Auto Configurator.

To install the PCMCIA device driver:

 Chapter 7.

About script files:

 Page 66.

The 760CD computers provide the *Auto Configurator*, a program for some PC Cards, so that you do not have to install the device driver supplied with the card to use it.

The resource and configuration information for the PC Cards are written in the script files. Once the information is written, you can use the *Auto Configurator Utility* to edit these script files.

When Auto Configurator is installed, the following line is added to the CONFIG.SYS file according to your operating system:

For OS/2:

BASEDEV=AUTODRV2.SYS

For DOS and Windows:

DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] AUTODRV.SYS



Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows

This section describes the Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows.

To start Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows, select the **Auto Configurator Utility** icon from the PC Card Director window.



The operation for OS/2 and for Windows is the same.

Advanced Information for PC Cards

Registering a PC Card in Auto Configurator

- 1 Select a card from the Available Cards list in the Auto Configurator Utility main panel.



Select the card for which you want to assign the resources first. For example, when you want to assign COM 3 to a modem card, and not COM 2, select the setting for COM 3 first.

- 2 Click on the **Add>>** button.
- 3 Click on the **Save** button.

The names in the left list box (**Available Cards**) are the cards that can be registered. The names in the right list box (**Selected Cards**) are the cards that are already registered in Auto Configurator. When a PC Card is installed, Auto Configurator starts from the top of the list to assign the resources to the card.

Deleting a Registered Card

- 1 Select the PC Card you want to delete from **Selected Cards** in the Auto Configurator Utility main panel.
- 2 Click on the **Delete** button.
- 3 Click on the **Save** button.

Advanced Information for PC Cards

Changing the Registered Order for PC Cards

To change the order of the registered PC Cards, do the following:

- 1** Click on the **Order...** button in the Auto Configurator Utility main panel.



The operation for OS/2 and for Windows is the same.

- 2** Refer to the following to change the order of the PC Cards in the list:

Moving a Card toward the Bottom

- a) Select the PC Card you want to move.
- b) Click on the **Down** button.

Every time you click on the **Down** button, the PC Card is moved toward the bottom of the list.

Moving a Card toward the Top

- a) Select the PC Card you want to move.
- b) Click on the **Up** button.

Every time you click on the **Up** button, the PC Card is moved toward the top of the list.

- 3** Click on the **OK** button to save the changes.

The changes are saved. To cancel the changes click on the **Cancel** button.

Advanced Information for PC Cards

Changing the Resource Information for the PC Card

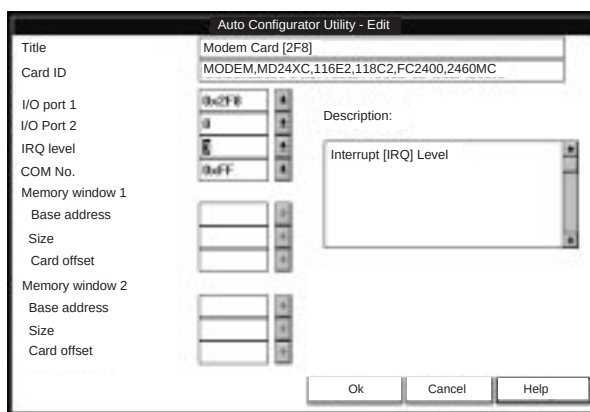
1 Select the PC Card you want to change from the left list box in the Auto Configurator Utility main panel.

2 Click on the **Edit...** button.

The following screen is displayed:

Note:

The current resource information is set as the default and appears in the input field of each item. The number that can be set is displayed in the pull-down list box.



3 You can change the following registered information for the PC Card.

The items that can be changed differ among PC Cards.

- Card ID
- I/O port address
- IRQ level
- COM number of the serial port
- Memory window address
- Memory window size
- Card offset address

4 Click on the **OK** button, and save the changes.

To cancel the changes, click on the **Cancel** button.



Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for DOS

To use the Auto Configurator Utility for DOS, do the following:

Note:

A script file contains the steps to enable the PC Card and the resource information for the I/O port, IRQ level, or memory address.

- 1** Create an AUTODRV.SCR file in DOS by gathering all the script files of the PC Cards you want to enable.

For information on writing a script file, refer to AUTODRV.DOC in the directory containing the script file.

- 2** Enter the following command at the DOS command prompt:

```
>AUTOUTL /D
```

The utility (AUTOUTL.EXE), script file (AUTODRV.SCR), and Auto Configurator itself (AUTODRV.SYS) must all be in the same directory.

Adding to the CONFIG.SYS File

For PC Card Director to work correctly, the PC Card device drivers (which make up the structured file of PC Card Director) must be registered in the CONFIG.SYS file. These drivers are automatically registered in the CONFIG.SYS file when you install PC Card Director following the instructions in Chapter 7. The following shows each driver registered in the CONFIG.SYS file and the standard rules.

Advanced Information for PC Cards



Registered Drivers and Standard Rules for OS/2

The following is a sample of the CONFIG.SYS file for OS/2:

```

:
BASEDEV=PCMCIA.SYS           ← Card Services
BASEDEV=ICRMU 1.SYS         ← Resource Map Utility
BASEDEV=IBM2SS 1.SYS        ← Socket Services
BASEDEV=AUTODRV2.SYS        ← Auto Configurator
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\VPCMCIA.SYS ← Virtual Card Services
:
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\xxxxxxx.SYS ← Storage card
                                device driver
:
REM PC_Card_Client_Device_Driver
:
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\$\ICPMOS2.SYS ← Power
                                Management Support driver

```

- Rule 1** Card Services, Resource Map Utility, and Socket Services must be listed before any other PCMCIA drivers.
- Rule 2** The Resource Map Utility is necessary only for OS/2 Version 2.1x.
- Rule 3** The PCMCIA Power Management Support driver must be listed after all drivers, at the end of the CONFIG.SYS file.
- Rule 4** When using storage cards, the device drivers must be installed according to the card type:

Using only an ATA card:

```

BASEDEV=PCM2ATA.ADD /!DM ← ATA card device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCMSSDIF.SYS ← Storage API
                                device driver
:
BASEDEV=OS2PCARD.DMD ← Storage Card Device Manager

```

Advanced Information for PC Cards

Using an ATA card and an SRAM card:

```
BASEDEV=PCM2ATA.ADD /!DM    ← ATA card device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCMSSDIF.SYS ← Storage API
                                device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCM2SRAM.SYS ← SRAM card
                                device driver
:
BASEDEV=OS2PCARD.DMD    ← Storage Card Device Manager
```

Using an ATA card and a Flash card:

```
BASEDEV=PCM2ATA.ADD /!DM    ← ATA card device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\FLSH2MTD.SYS ← Flash Card
                                Memory Technology driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCMSSDIF.SYS ← Storage API
                                device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCM2FLSH.SYS ← Flash card
                                device driver
:
BASEDEV=OS2PCARD.DMD    ← Storage Card Device Manager
```

Using an ATA card, an SRAM card, and a Flash card:

```
BASEDEV=PCM2ATA.ADD /!DM    ← ATA card device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\FLSH2MTD.SYS ← Flash Card
                                Memory Technology driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCMSSDIF.SYS ← Storage API
                                device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCM2SRAM.SYS ← SRAM card
                                device driver
DEVICE=C:\THINKPAD\PCM2FLSH.SYS ← Flash card
                                device driver
:
BASEDEV=OS2PCARD.DMD    ← Storage Card Device Manager
```

Rule 5 The Storage Card Device Manager (OS2PCARD.DMD) must be added after the Power Management Support driver (\$ICPMOS2.SYS) in the CONFIG.SYS file. If you don't have the Power Management Support driver, the Storage Card Device Manager must be added at the end of the CONFIG.SYS file.

Advanced Information for PC Cards



Registered Drivers and Standard Rules for DOS and Windows

The following is a sample of the CONFIG.SYS file for DOS and Windows:

```

:
DEVICE=C:\DOS\EMM386.EXE FRAME=D      X=C8  -CFFF
:
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\IBMDSS 1.SYS ← Socket Services
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\IBMDOSCS.SYS ← Card Services
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\IBMDSCSE.SYS ← Enhanced
                                   Card Services
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\DICRMU 1.SYS /MA=C8  -CFFF
                                   ↑ Resource Map Utility
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\ICPMDOS.SYS ← Power Management
                                   Support driver
:
REM PC_Card_Client_Device_Driver
:
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\xxxxxxx.SYS ← Storage card
                                   device driver
DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\AUTODRV.SYS ← Auto Configurator
:

```

Rule 1 When using the PCMCIA drivers with the Software EMS driver (EMM386.EXE), you must specify the X= parameter for EMM386.EXE. This is to avoid conflict in the memory area used by the PCMCIA drivers and the Software EMS driver.

Rule 2 Socket Services, Card Services, and Resource Map Utility must be listed in this order.

Rule 3 The Power Management Support driver must be listed after the Resource Map Utility.

Rule 4 The PC Card Client device driver must be listed before the Auto Configurator.

Rule 5 When using storage cards, you must install the device driver according to the card type, as listed below.

Using only an ATA card:

Advanced Information for PC Cards

DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\PAWATA.SYS

Using an ATA card and an SRAM card:

DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\PAWATAS.SYS

Using an ATA card, an SRAM card, and a Flash card:

DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\FLSHDMTD.SYS

↑ Flash card Memory Technology driver

DEVICEHIGH=C:\THINKPAD\PAWATASF.SYS

↑ ATA SRAM Flash card driver

Rule 6 The Enhanced Card Services (IBMDSCSE.SYS) is necessary only when you are using a Flash card.

When the total storage of the Flash cards used at the same time exceeds 10MB, you must do one of the following:

Assign the /TSIZE:*n* parameter in the PAWATASF.SYS file.

For example:

1. If the maximum total storage is 20MB, specify:

DEVICE=PAWATASF.SYS /TSIZE:6

2. If the maximum total storage is 40MB, specify:

DEVICE=PAWATASF.SYS /TSIZE:1

See the /TSIZE parameter on page 301.

This increases the memory resident area for PAWATASF.SYS.

Assign the /EMS parameter in the PAWATASF.SYS file, and the /NE parameter in the IBMDOSCS.SYS file. This sets IBMDOSCS.SYS not to use the EMS page frame and allows PAWATASF.SYS to use it instead. (The EMS memory must be enabled.)

For example:

DEVICE=IBMDOSCS.SYS /NE

DEVICE=IBMDSCSE.SYS

:

DEVICE=PAWATASF.SYS /EMS

Advanced Information for PC Cards

Storage Card Device Driver

PCM2ATA.ADD, PCM2SRAM.SYS, and PCM2FLSH.SYS are storage card device drivers. The following section describes these storage card device drivers available in PC Card Director.

PCMCIA Storage Card Device Driver for OS/2

Note:

Install PCM2ATA.ADD for all storage cards, even when you are using SRAM or Flash cards.

PCM2ATA.ADD supports ATA cards, PCM2SRAM.SYS supports SRAM cards, and PCM2FLSH.SYS supports Flash cards.

Any PC Card installed in the slot is recognized by its device driver, so regardless of its type, you can access the card by the drive name assigned to the slot. When using the PCMCIA ATA Card Mount Utility, install the PCMCIA Storage API device driver (PCMSSDIF.SYS) for OS/2.

PCMCIA Storage Card Device Driver for DOS and Windows

ATA cards, SRAM cards, and Flash cards are PCMCIA storage cards. PAWATA.SYS supports ATA cards, PAWATAS.SYS supports ATA cards and SRAM cards, and PAWATASF.SYS supports ATA cards, SRAM cards, and Flash cards.

These device drivers assign a drive letter for each usable PCMCIA slot. These drive letters are displayed when the device drivers are initialized, and then you can use the drive letter to access the installed PCMCIA storage card. When you run FORMAT.COM against the drive letter, the SRAM card is formatted as a diskette and the ATA or Flash card is formatted as a nonremovable disk. In the File Manager under Windows, the drive letters are represented and treated as a diskette drive, regardless of the storage card type.

Before Using PCMCIA Storage Cards

Format new PCMCIA storage cards before use. For Flash cards, run the Flash Format Utility (FFORMAT.EXE/FFORMAT2.EXE); then format the Flash card. For ATA cards and SRAM cards, there is no need to run any programs before formatting the card. Format using

the FORMAT.COM program, by displaying the File Manager (for Windows), or by choosing the drive icon (for OS/2).

Using PCMCIA ATA Cards with Multiple Partitions

The device driver assigns a drive letter only to the active (bootable) partition of the ATA card if it holds multiple partitions. For other primary partitions or logical drives in an extended partition, use the PCMCIA ATA Card Mount utility to assign the drive letter to it.

Parameters for the OS/2 PCMCIA ATA Card Device Driver

The following are the parameters in the OS/2 PCMCIA ATA card device driver and their explanations:

BASEDEV=PCM2ATA.ADD [/S:n] [/P:hhhh] [/EXIRQ:n]
[/NOBEEP] [/B] [/STBTIME:n] [/MDRV:n] [/!DM]

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| /S:n | Specifies the number of PC Card slots. /S:1 shows that there is only one PC Card slot. When this parameter is not set, the number of PC Card slots is set to 2. |
| /P:hhhh | Specifies the lower limit for the I/O address of the ATA card. The device driver assigns the next usable I/O address from this lower limit to the card. When this parameter is not set, the device driver looks for a usable address and assigns it to the card. |
| /EXIRQ:n | Specifies the IRQ level that <i>is not</i> assigned to the card. You can set more than one IRQ level. |
| /NOBEEP | Specifies not to beep when a storage card is installed. When this parameter is not set, you will hear a beep every time a storage card is installed into the PCMCIA slot. |
| /B | Specifies that OS/2 has started from an ATA card. When this parameter is set, there will be no redundancy in assigning the logical drive to the slot where OS/2 was booted. It depends on the ATA card whether you can start OS/2 from it. |

Advanced Information for PC Cards

- /STBTIME:n** Specifies the time (from 1 to 21 minutes) until entering standby mode. When the ATA card is not accessed for the time specified by this parameter, the ATA card enters standby mode (only when your ATA card supports standby mode). When this parameter is not specified, standby mode for the ATA card is disabled.
- /MDRV:n** Specifies the number of extra drives that can be used in addition to the number of PCMCIA slots available for the PCMCIA storage devices. When this parameter is not specified, no extra drive is given to the device driver. The extra drives can be activated by the PCMCIA ATA Card Mount utility. For more information, see "ATA Card Mount Utility" on page 65.
- /!DM** Specifies not to use OS2DASD.DMD as the device manager. When this parameter is set, OS2PCARD.DMD is used instead.

Parameters for DOS PCMCIA Storage Card Device Drivers

The following are the parameters in the DOS PCMCIA storage card device driver and their explanations:

- DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] PAWATA.SYS [/P:hhhh] [/NOBEEP] [/STBTIME:n] [/MDRV:n]
- DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] PAWATAS.SYS [/P:hhhh] [/NOBEEP] [/STBTIME:n] [/MDRV:n]
- DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] PAWATASF.SYS [/P:hhhh] [/NOBEEP] [/STBTIME:n] [/MDRV:n] [/EMS] [/TSIZE:n]
- /P:hhhh** Specifies the lower limit for the I/O address of the ATA card. The device driver assigns the next usable I/O address from this lower limit to the card. When this parameter is not set, the device driver looks for a usable address and assigns that address to the card.
- /NOBEEP** Specifies not to beep when a storage card is installed. When this parameter is not set, you will hear a beep every time a storage card is installed into the PCMCIA slot.

- /STBTIME:*n*** Specifies the time (from 1 to 21 minutes) until entering standby mode. When the ATA card is not accessed for the time specified by this parameter, the ATA card enters standby mode (only when your ATA card supports standby mode). When this parameter is not specified, standby mode for the ATA card is disabled.
- /MDRV:*n*** Specifies the number of extra drives that can be used in addition to the number of PCMCIA slots available for the PCMCIA storage devices. When this parameter is not specified, no extra drive is given to the device driver. The extra drives can be activated by the PCMCIA ATA Card Mount Utility.
- /EMS** When this parameter is specified, the device driver uses the EMS resources if they are usable. When this parameter is not specified, the device driver does not use the EMS resources.
- /TSIZE:*n*** You can specify the size of the table for the device driver data in the resident memory area. When the EMS resources are not usable, the data tables are created in the resident memory area. When the EMS resources are usable, this parameter is ignored. The table size depends on the variable *n* and is calculated as follows:

$$\text{table size} = n \times 1024 \text{ bytes}$$

Specify *n* in a decimal number. When this parameter is not specified, the device driver creates the table with *n*=4. Select the variable *n* depending on the total capacity of the Flash card: The following is an example of the relationship between the variable *n* and the total capacity of the Flash card:

- Up to 10MB: *n*=4
- Up to 20MB: *n*=6
- Up to 40MB: *n*=10

Advanced Information for PC Cards

PCMCIA Storage Card Device Manager for OS/2

OS2PCARD.DMD is the device manager for the PCMCIA storage card. Specify the /!DM parameter in the PCM2ATA.ADD line, so OS2PCARD.DMD is used instead of OS2DASD.DMD. If you do not specify /!DM, PCM2ATA.ADD uses the OS/2 standard Storage Card Device Manager (OS2DASD.DMD); however, under some conditions the format will not be correct when you use OS2DASD.DMD.

The following is a line from the CONFIG.SYS file that describes the Storage Card Device Manager:

```
BASEDEV=OS2PCARD.DMD
```

OS/2 PCMCIA Storage API Device Driver

This device driver provides a communication function between PC Card Director or the mount utility, and the OS/2 PCMCIA ATA card device driver. As a result, a utility in the upper layer can get the drive letter or partition information of the PCMCIA storage card.

The following is a line from the CONFIG.SYS file that describes the Storage API device driver:

```
DEVICE =[drive:][directory]PCMSSDIF.SYS
```

Flash Card Memory Technology Driver

This driver is used to read and write to a Flash card. It is used by the DOS storage card device driver (PAWATASF.SYS) and OS2 Flash card driver (PCM2FLSH.SYS).

The following is a line from the CONFIG.SYS file that describes the Flash Card Memory Technology driver, according to the operating system:

For OS/2:

```
DEVICE =[drive:] [directory] FLSH2MTD.SYS ← Memory
      Technology driver
DEVICE =[drive:] [directory] PCM2FLSH.SYS
      ↑ Storage card device driver
```

For DOS and Windows:

```
DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] IBMDOSCS.SYS ← Card Services
DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] IBMDSCSE.SYS
    ↑ Enhanced Card Services
DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] FLSHDMTD.SYS
    ↑ Memory Technology driver
DEVICE=[drive:] [directory] PAWATASF.SYS
    ↑ ATA SRAM Flash card device driver
```

Checking the Allocated Resources for the PC Card

If the resources for the PC Cards are not correctly allocated, you will see error messages. You can check which resources for the PC Card were not correctly allocated by using PC Card Director. To check the resources that could not be allocated, click on the **Status** button in the PC Card Director program.

The following are some reasons why the resources could not be correctly allocated, and corresponding actions you should take to solve the problem.

- The resource was already reserved by another device.
- Resource Map Utility or other configuration files were not set up correctly.

To change the resource settings for the PC Card or other devices, you can do one of the following:

- Refer to the system manual or utility program and check which device is using the resources planned to be used by the PC Card. Then, change the settings for the device by using, for example, the setup programs. For more information, refer to the manuals supplied with your computer.

- If your PC Card is enabled by a PC Card enabler, you can change the resources assigned for the PC Card by changing the parameters in the PC Card enabler, or change the settings in the configuration file of the PC Card. For more information, refer to the manuals supplied with your PC Card.

Advanced Information for PC Cards

If you are using Auto Configurator to enable your PC Card, you can change the resources assigned to the PC Card by using the Auto Configurator. Make sure the resource is not used by other devices and can be used by the PC Card and its application program. For more information, see "Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows" on page 289.

If you are using modem cards, some modem cards use serial port COM1 or COM2 and do not have the setup information for COM3 and COM4. These modem cards cannot be enabled when other devices are using COM1 and COM2. (For example, as a default, COM1 is used by the InfraRed device and COM2 is used by the Mwave modem.) There are error messages that the I/O port address 3F8 or 2F8, or IRQ level 3 or 4, were not allocated.

In this case use the ThinkPad Setup Utility in the ThinkPad Features program to:

- For OS/2: Disable the devices using COM1 or COM2; then restart the system.
- For DOS or Windows: Reserve COM2 for the PC Card, and use COM1 for other integrated communication devices.

Avoiding PC Card Resource Conflicts

PC Card Director checks the resources for most devices used by the system to avoid resource conflicts, but does not recognize all option devices used. Especially, when you are using the Dock I or Dock II, there is a possibility that the I/O port address or IRQ level may conflict with the PC Card.

Check the status of the PC Card by using PC Card Director. When the PC Card is set to "Ready," the resources used for that PC Card are displayed. Refer to the manuals supplied with the system or option adapters to check that the resources for the devices in the system or for the option adapters are not conflicting with the resources for the IRQ level, I/O port address, or memory window of the PC Card. If you are using OS/2 Warp Version 3, you can check the assigned system resources using RMVIEW.EXE.

If there is a conflict:

Use the Resource Map Utility, so that those resources are not assigned to the PC Card. (Change the value for the /MA= parameter, or add the /MX=, /PX=, or /IX= parameter.)

If you are using OS/2 Warp Version 3, use RESERVE.SYS to register those resources in OS/2.

To set RESERVE.SYS, refer to the manuals or online help for OS/2 Warp, or refer to the READ.ME file of PC Card Director.

If you are using Auto Configurator, change the enabling order or resource information using the Auto Configurator Utility.

See "Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for DOS" on page 293 and "Starting the Auto Configurator Utility for OS/2 or Windows" on page 289.

Change the parameter for the PC Card enabler. Refer to the manuals supplied with the PC Card.

If you are using network cards, change the resource information for the PC Card stated in the PROTOCOL.INI or NET.CFG file.

To change the configuration file of the network cards, refer to the manuals or READ.ME files of the PC Cards or network drivers.



Information for Mwave DSP Features



Appendix C. Additional Information for Mwave DSP Feature

Note:
In some countries, the Mwave telephony functions are available only after the DAA/Telephony Kit option is installed.

This appendix provides detailed information about the ThinkPad Mwave DSP Features.

Audio Information

This section provides information about the ThinkPad audio features.

Sound

The Mwave DSP features provide support for Windows Version 3.11 audio applications that comply with the Windows MultiMedia Extensions (MME) for audio; for example, Windows Sound Recorder and Windows Media Player that are shipped with Windows Version 3.11.

In general, recording audio music and speech at higher quality requires more disk storage. The following table shows some typical values for various sampling rates:

Sample Rate	Sample Size	Frequency Range	Signal/Noise Ratio	Remarks
44.1 KHz	16 bits	20 Hz — 20 KHz	80 dB	CD quality
22.05 KHz	16 bits	20 Hz — 10 KHz	80 dB	< CD quality
11 KHz	16 bits	20 Hz — 5 KHz	80 dB	AM quality
9.6 KHz	14 bits	200 Hz — 4 KHz	60 dB	Toll quality
8.0 KHz	8 bits	200 Hz — 4 KHz	60 dB	Toll quality

Information for Mwave DSP Features

Mwave MIDI Overview

Mwave MIDI Synthesizer Overview

The Mwave audio features can be a music synthesizer, creating realistic instrument sounds from a sequence of MIDI commands. The MIDI standard defines a very compact representation for music. MIDI is composed of a sequence of commands representing musical events, such as a key press on a music keyboard.

The Mwave Windows Audio Device Driver provides a sampled sound MIDI synthesizer that exceeds the Base Multitimbral requirements of the MPC 1 and MPC 2 specifications.

The Mwave synthesizer is enhanced with a QSound** process. QSound is a signal processing technique used to deceive the acoustic response system (hearing) of a listener. Audio from a stereo speaker system that has been processed by QSound can give the listener the perception that the speakers are displaced much further to the listener's left and right than they actually are.

This is particularly useful for a personal computer system, in which table space is limited, and a small set of speakers are located immediately adjacent to the computer. The angular displacement of the speakers to the listener's left and right is ordinarily not enough to produce a decent stereo effect. But with QSound processing, the listener can perceive sound coming from a variety of directions, some of which are significantly further to the left and right than the actual location of the speakers. The net result is a significantly improved stereo effect.

To optimize the QSound effect, sit directly in front of the computer with the speakers equally distant from both sides of the computer.

Understanding the MIDI Mapper

The MIDI Mapper is a program included with Microsoft Windows that interacts with the Mwave Windows Synthesizer Device Driver to control the way sounds are created on your Mwave feature. In Windows MIDI applications allowing you to specify a MIDI output

Information for Mwave DSP Features

device, select the Windows MIDI Mapper as the output device rather than sending output to the Mwave driver directly.

The MIDI Mapper controls which of the 16 MIDI channels to send to the Mwave feature for playback. The MPC audio specification describes two types of synthesizers. The BASE Multitimbral synthesizer transmits data on MIDI channels 13–16 and supports 8 simultaneous voices (8 notes at once, each of which can come from a different instrument). The EXTENDED Multitimbral synthesizer transmits data on MIDI channels 1–10 and supports 32 simultaneous voices.

The Mwave feature supplies the following MIDI Mappers for selecting which MIDI format to use for Mwave:

Mwave EXT GM For Mwave MIDI synthesizer channels 1–10

Mwave Base GM For Mwave MIDI synthesizer channels 13–16

The MPC standard requires authors to provide two versions of every MIDI composition stored in the same file. Channels 1–10 hold the version written for Extended Multitimbral synthesizers, whereas channels 13–16 hold the version written for Base Multitimbral synthesizers.

Most MIDI files included with Windows applications follow this standard of containing two versions of each composition. This is why the Mwave MIDI synthesizer comes with both Base and Extended MIDI Mapper setups. If all channels were played at once, both versions of a MIDI composition would play at the same time. The Mwave Windows synthesizer usually sounds best when the Mwave EXT GM setup is selected in the MIDI Mapper.

If you have a MIDI file that is not producing sound on your Mwave feature, MIDI commands may be being sent on a set of channels the MIDI Mapper is not responding to. Try using the Windows MIDI Mapper to switch the setup between Mwave Base and Mwave Extended Multitimbral modes. This lets you see if the MIDI commands in the file are provided for only one of the two modes.

Information for Mwave DSP Features

Other MIDI Controls

The Mwave feature's MIDI synthesizer recognizes several types of control information in the MIDI data stream:

- Key velocity** The harder the key is pressed, the louder the note sounds.
- Main volume** This is usually controlled by a knob on a MIDI keyboard. It is received on control number 7.
- Pitch bend** This can be used to mimic the sound of a whammy bar on a guitar and is usually controlled by a thumb wheel on a MIDI keyboard. Note pitch can be varied ± 2 semitones.
- Pan** The Mwave feature's MIDI synthesizer uses QSound to implement pan. By using QSound, the position of each channel's instrument is not limited by the position of the speakers. It is received on control number 10.
- Vibrato** Also referred to as *modulation*, this control produces rapid, small changes in the pitch of a note and is usually controlled by a thumb wheel on a MIDI keyboard. Vibrato depth can be varied ± 2 semitones. It is received on control number 1.
- Sustain** Each note of an instrument has an envelope that describes the loudness of the note during attack, decay, sustain, and release periods. Some MIDI keyboards can be used with a pianolike sustain pedal that prolongs the sustain period to mimic holding a note. It is received on control number 64.

Telephony Information

This section provides additional information about the ThinkPad telephony features.

United States Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 (Facsimile Devices)

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone facsimile machine unless such message clearly contains, in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business, other entity, or individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual.

In order to program this information into your facsimile, you should refer to the accompanying fax software package.



Information for Mwave DSP Features



Appendix D. Using PS2 Commands

Please note that PS2 commands are subject to change without notice. If you enter a command written in this section and receive an error, type **PS2 ?** and refer to the online help menu.

You can enter the following PS2 commands from the DOS command prompt (of OS/2 and Windows, also) to set the features for your computer. When entering a command, enter it in the following syntax.

PS2 [*Parameter1*] [*Parameter2*] [*Parameter3*]

Syntax Rules

Follow the rules below when you enter a command.

<i>Syntax</i>	<i>Rule</i>
	Select one of the options on either side of the vertical bar ().
Highlighted	Enter the exact highlighted letters in either uppercase or lowercase.
UPPERCASE	Enter any value for the following: XX: 0 - 20 HH: 0 - 23 MM: 0 - 59 SS: 0 - 59 The MM (minutes) and SS (seconds) are optional. The default values are 0.
lowercase	Command elements in lowercase are optional. For example, PS2 SE OF and of PS2 Serial OFf gives the same results.

Using PS2 Commands

The following is a list of commonly used PS2 commands. It is organized as follows:

Description of the command

Parameter1	Parameter2	Parameter3
------------	------------	------------

Power Management Commands

Sets power on or off for the PCMCIA slots.

CARD	ON OFF	—
------	----------	---

Sets whether or not to enter suspend mode when the LCD is closed.

Cover	Enable Disable	—
-------	------------------	---

Note:

This command is effective on the current power mode set by the PM command.

Sets Power, LCd, DISK, SPeed, and STandby to their original values.

DEFAULT	—	—
---------	---	---

When to discharge:



Page 119.

Discharges the battery pack.

DISCHARGE	Enable Disable	—
-----------	------------------	---

When a secondary battery pack is installed:

DISCHARGE	MAIN 2ND	Enable Disable
-----------	------------	------------------

Note:

This command is effective on the current power mode set by the PM commands.

Sets the hard disk drive power-saving timer for the specified number of minutes (xx).

DISK	xx	—
------	----	---

Enters standby or suspend mode when attaching an expansion unit.

DOCK	Partial Full	—
------	----------------	---

Using PS2 Commands

Note:

Only on models with Mwave DSP installed.

Sets the features for the digital signal processor (DSP).

DSP	Enable Disable	—
	AD Dress	0030 4E30 8E30
	DMA	0 1 6 7
	IRQ	5 7 10 11 15

Sets the features for the infrared port (IR).

IR	Enable Disable	—
	ON OF f	—
	PORT	Front Rear Both
	MO de	TPad Sharp
	CO MMAddress	3F8 2F8 3E8 2E8
	IR Address	1A0 1B0 1C0 1D0
	IRQ	3 4 5 10 11 15
	DMA03	Enable Disable

Note:

Use this command before using other hibernation commands.

Creates the hibernation file.

HFILE	C – Z DE lete	—
--------------	------------------------	---

Note:

Create the hibernation file using the HFILE command before using this command.

Enters hibernation mode when the power switch is pressed.

HSWITCH	Enable Disable	
----------------	------------------	--

Sets the timer to enter hibernation mode after the specified number of minutes (xx).

HTimer	xx	[AC DC]
---------------	----	---------------------------

Note:

Create the hibernation file using the HFILE command before using the LBH command.

Sets the power management mode to enter when a low-battery condition occurs.

AC: Specifies battery mode when the AC Adapter is connected.

DC: Specifies ac mode when using battery power.

LBattery	Suspend Hibernation	—
-----------------	-----------------------	---

Note:

This command is effective on the current power mode set by the PM command.

Sets the LCD off when there is no computer operation after the specified number of minutes (xx).

LCd	xx	—
------------	----	---

Using PS2 Commands

Note:

yyyy can be set from 1995 to 2093.

Sets the resume timer.

ON at	[yyyy/MM/DD] HH:MM:SS Clear	—
--------------	---	---

Sets the power mode.

PM ode	High Auto Custom	[AC DC]
---------------	---	---------------------------

Note:

When the **AC** or **DC** option is not specified, this command is effective on the current power mode set by the PM command.

Sets the timer to enter suspend mode after the specified number of minutes (xx).

AC: Specifies battery mode when the AC Adapter is connected.

DC: Specifies ac mode when using battery power.

P ower	xx	[AC DC]
---------------	----	---------------------------

RediSafe suspend mode:

 Page 126.

Resumes normal operation when detecting the ring indicator.

RI	Enable Disable	—
-----------	--------------------------------	---

Enters the RediSafe suspend mode.

S Afe	Enable Disable	—
--------------	--------------------------------	---

Sets power on or off for the serial device attached to the serial port.

S Erial	ON OFF	—
----------------	------------------------	---

Note:

When the **AC** or **DC** option is not specified, this command is effective on the current power mode set by the PM commands.

Sets the processor speed.

AC: Specifies battery mode when the AC Adapter is connected.

DC: Specifies ac mode when using battery power.

S Peed	Fixed Auto	MAX Medium Slow MIN	[AC DC]
---------------	----------------------------	---	---------------------------

Sets the timer to enter hibernation mode from suspend mode after the specified number of minutes.

S2H	30 60 90 Disable	—
------------	--	---

Using PS2 Commands

Sets the timer to enter standby mode after the specified number of minutes (xx).
AC: Specifies battery mode when the AC Adapter is connected.
DC: Specifies ac mode when using battery power.

STandby	xx	[AC DC]
---------	----	-----------

Note:
Create the hibernation file using the HFILE command before using the TI H command.

Sets the power management mode to enter by the automatic power-saving timer.

Timer	Suspend Hibernation	—
-------	-----------------------	---

Display Commands

Sets the features for enhanced video.

EVideo	Enable Disable	—
	IRQ	5 7 9 10 11 15 Disable
	ADDRESS	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
	MPEG DMA	Enable Disable 5 6 7

Sets the screen expansion.

HVEXpansion	ON OFF	—
-------------	----------	---

Sets where to display information.

Screen	LCD CRT BOTH	—
--------	------------------	---

Sets the frequency for the external display.

VSYNC	640×480	60 72 75
	800×600	56 60 72 Disable
	1024×768	431 60 70 72 75 Disable

Alarm (Sound) Commands

Using PS2 Commands

Sets the computer to beep in certain conditions.

BEEP	ON OFF	Alarm System Warn
-------------	-----------------	----------------------------------

Sets the speaker LCD indicator to appear when the computer beeps.

SLed	Enable Disable	—
-------------	-------------------------	---

Note:

The help for this command appears only when an expansion unit is attached to the computer.

Sets the balance for the attached expansion unit.

XBalance	0 – 10	—
-----------------	---------------	---

Note:

The help for this command appears only when an expansion unit is attached to the computer.

Sets the volume for the attached expansion unit.

XVOLUME	0 – 10	—
----------------	---------------	---

System Setup Commands

Note:

This command is effective only when an option is installed in the UltraBay.

Sets the IRQ level for the option in the UltraBay to 15.

IDE2	Enable Disable	—
-------------	-------------------------	---

Displays the DMA channel assignments.

? DMA	—	—
--------------	---	---

Sets the Fn key lock function.

FNSTicky	Enable Disable	—
-----------------	-------------------------	---

Sets the **HVEXP**ansion command to on or off with the Fn+F8 key combination.

F8	Enable Disable	—
-----------	-------------------------	---

Sets the features for the internal modem/fax.

IMODEM	Enable Disable ADDRESS	— 1 2 3 4
---------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------

Using PS2 Commands

Displays the interrupt level assignments.

? IRQ	—	—
--------------	---	---

Sets the MIDI/joystick port.

JStick	Enable Disable	—
---------------	------------------	---

Sets the keyboard typematic speed.

KRate	Normal Fast	—
--------------	---------------	---

Note:

When using a Joystick on a Sound Blaster card installed in DOCK II, disable the MIDI/Joystick port using this command or the **JoyStick** command.

Sets the features for the MIDI/joystick port for MIDI equipment.

MIDI	Enable Disable ADDRESS IRQ	— 300 330 5 7 10 11
-------------	--	---

Sets the features for the parallel port.

PARallel	Enable Disable ADDRESS MODE DMA	— LPT1 LPT2 LPT3 Uni Bi EPP ECP 0 1 3 Disable
-----------------	---	---

Sets the features for the serial port.

SERA	Enable Disable ADDRESS	— 1 2 3 4
-------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------

Disables the screen off, standby, and suspend timers for presentations.

PRESENTation	Enable Disable	—
---------------------	------------------	---

Sets the features for the Sound Blaster emulation.

SB	Enable Disable ADDRESS DMA IRQ	— 220 240 0 1 6 7 5 7 10 11
-----------	--	---

Using PS2 Commands

Sets the startup screen when the computer power is turned on.

START up	Enable Disable	—
-----------------	------------------	---

Sets the TrackPoint III.

TPO int	Enable Disable	—
----------------	------------------	---

Other Commands

Displays the help menu.

? H elp	—	—
------------------	---	---

Sets the A drive to the internal or external diskette drive.

FDD	Internal External	—
------------	---------------------	---

Note:

Create the hibernation file using the HFILE command before using this command.

Enters hibernation mode.

HIB ernation	—	—
---------------------	---	---

Enters suspend mode.

OFF SUS pend	—	—
-----------------------	---	---

Turns off the computer.

TURN	OFF	—
-------------	-----	---

Appendix E. MPEG Specifications and Commands

This section provides the MPEG specifications and commands supported the Windows MPEG driver.

MPEG Clip Specification

The IBM MPEG driver supports the following MPEG clip specifications:

MPEG2 HHR (Half-Horizontal Resolution) at NTSC resolution

- 352 x 480 x 30 frames/second
- Up to 4 Mbit per second bit rate

MPEG1 standard

ISO/IEC International Standard 11172-2 (11/93)

MPEG audio

Layer I, II

MCI Commands Supported by Windows MPEG Driver

The MCI (Media Control Interface) IBM MPEG driver supports a subset of digital video type MCI command sets. All the commands support test, notify, and wait. The commands currently supported by this driver are:

Command messages	Functions	Items
MCI_GETDEVCAPS	capability	can play can stretch can test compound device device type has audio has video uses files
MCI_CLOSE	close	
MCI_CONFIGURE	configure	
MCI_CUE	cue	
MCI_INFO	info	file product version window text

MPEG Specifications

Command messages	Functions	Items
MCI_LOAD	load	load file
MCI_OPEN	open	alias parent style type element
MCI_PAUSE	pause	pause
MCI_PLAY	play	from to repeat
MCI_PUT	put	destination window window client at rectangle
MCI_RESUME	resume	resume
MCI_SEEK	seek	to to end to start
MCI_SET	set	time format frames milli seconds bytes set audio left on left off right on right off
MCI_SETAUDIO	setaudio	left off left on left volume to on off right off right on right volume to volume to
MCI_SETVIDEO	setvideo	on off keycolor

Command messages	Functions	Items
MCI_STATUS	status	audio stream video stream current track forward window handle length media present mode monitor number of tracks position ready frame rate workspace size seek exactly time format window visible window minimized window maximized max video bit rate audio bit rate keycolor volume start position
MCI_STEP	step	frames
MCI_STOP	stop	stop
MCI_UPDATE	update	rectangle hdc paint
MCI_WHERE	where	destination destination max window window max source source max
MCI_WINDOW	window	handle handle default state text



MPEG Specifications



Appendix F. Features and Specifications

This appendix describes features and specifications for the computer. For more information, refer to the *Technical Reference* manual.

Features

Microprocessor

Intel** Pentium** Processor 90MHz or 120MHz
256KB external cache memory

Memory

Onboard (built-in): 8MB RAM
Optional: 4MB, 8MB, and 16MB DIMMs with DIMM adapter

Storage devices

2.5-inch removable hard disk drive
3.5-inch 2.88MB or 1.44MB removable diskette drive
5-inch removable CD-ROM XA quadruple (4X) speed drive

Display

TFT color LCD, supporting up to 16 777 216 colors
12.1 inches or 10.4 inches (when measured diagonally)
Up to 800-by-600 resolution on the LCD
Up to 1024-by-768 resolution on the external display
Brightness control

Keyboard

84-key, 85-key, or 89-key
TrackPoint III
Fn key function

External interface

Serial connector (EIA-RS232D)
Parallel connector (Centronics)
External input-device connector
External-display connector
External-diskette-drive connector

Features and Specifications

PCMCIA slots (two Type I or Type II PC Cards, or one Type III PC Card)

Headphone jack

Microphone/line-in jack (supports a dynamic microphone or a self-battery-powered condenser microphone)

Fax/modem port (in some countries, available as an option)

Infrared ports

MIDI/Joystick port

Video In/Out ports

System bus

240-pin, 16-bit AT bus connector

Specifications

Size

Width: 297 mm (11.7 in.)

Depth: 210 mm (8.3 in.)

Height:

- Model 1: 54.3 mm (2.14 in.)
- Model 2: 49.7 mm (1.96 in.)

Weight

Minimum configuration with lithium ion battery pack:

Model 1: Approximately 3.3 kg (7.3 in.)

Model 2: Approximately 2.9 kg (6.4 lb)

Environment

Note:

When you charge the lithium ion battery pack, its temperature must be at least 10°C (50°F).

Temperature (at altitudes less than 2438 m (8000 ft)):

- Operating¹ 5° to 35°C (41° to 95°F)
- Operating² 10° to 35°C (50° to 95°F)
- Non-operating: 5° to 43°C (41° to 109°F)

Relative Humidity:

- Operating¹ 8% to 95%
- Operating² 8% to 80%

Maximum altitude: 3048 m (10 000 ft)³

- Maximum temperature at 3048 m (10 000 ft): 31.3°C (88° F)

Heat output

Approximately 30 Kcal per hour

Electrical (AC Adapter)

Sine-wave input, at 50 to 60 Hz, is required

The input rating of the AC Adapter: 100–240 V ac, 50/60 Hz.

¹ With no diskette in drive.

² With diskette in drive.

³ In unpressurized conditions.

Features and Specifications

Lithium ion battery pack

Nominal voltage: 10.8 V dc

Capacity: 2.8 AH

IBM Power Cords

For your safety, IBM provides a power cord with a grounded attachment plug to use with this IBM product. To avoid electrical shock, always use the power cord and plug with a properly grounded outlet.

IBM power cords used in the United States and Canada are listed by Underwriters Laboratory (UL) and certified by the Canadian Standards Association (CSA).

For units intended to be operated at 115 volts: Use a UL-listed and CSA-certified cord set consisting of a minimum 18 AWG, Type SVT or SJT, three-conductor cord, a maximum of 15 feet in length, and a parallel blade, grounding-type attachment plug rated 15 amperes, 125 volts.

For units intended to be operated at 230 volts (in the U.S.): Use a UL-listed and CSA-certified cord set consisting of a minimum 18 AWG, Type SVT or SJT, three-conductor cord, a maximum of 15 feet in length, and a tandem blade, grounding-type attachment plug rated 15 amperes, 250 volts.

For units intended to be operated at 230 volts (outside the U.S.): Use a cord set with a grounding-type attachment plug rated 15 amperes (minimum), 250 volts. The cord set should be marked <HAR> and have the appropriate safety approvals for the country in which the equipment will be installed.

IBM power cords for a specific country are usually available only in that country:

Features and Specifications

IBM Power Cord Part Number	Used in These Countries
25H2205	Argentina, Australia, New Guinea, New Zealand, Papua, Paraguay, Uruguay
25H2207	Bahamas, Barbados, Bermuda, Bolivia, Canada, Cayman Islands, Colombia, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, El Salvador, Guatemala, Guyana, Haiti, Honduras, Jamaica, Korea (South), Mexico, Netherlands Antilles, Nicaragua, Panama, Peru, Philippines, Saudi Arabia, Suriname, Taiwan, Trinidad (West Indies), United States of America, Venezuela
25H2219	Thailand
25H2209	Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Czech Republic, Egypt, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Indonesia, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Spain, Sweden, Turkey, former Yugoslavia
25H2211	Denmark
25H2213	Bangladesh, Pakistan, South Africa, Sri Lanka
25H2215	Abu Dhabi, Albania, Antigua, Bahrain, Brunei, Dubai, Fiji, Hong Kong, India, Ireland, Kenya, Kuwait, Macao, Malaysia, Nigeria, Oman, People's Republic of China, Qatar, Singapore, United Kingdom
25H2221	Switzerland
25H2223	Chile, Italy
25H2225	Israel
85G6665	Japan (2-pin)

Features and Specifications

Diskette Standards

To get the best performance from your diskette drives, use high-quality diskettes (such as IBM diskettes) that meet or exceed the following standards:

1MB, 3.5-inch, unformatted diskette:

ANSI (American National Standards Institute) X3.137
ISO (International Standards Organization) 8860
ECMA (European Computer Manufacturers Association) 100

2MB, 3.5-inch, unformatted diskette:

ANSI X3.171
ISO 9529
ECMA 125

Note:

In some country, 4MB diskettes can be used when the diskette drive option is installed.

4MB, 3.5-inch, unformatted diskette:

ANSI Standard (under proposal at the time of printing)
ISO 10994 (Type 303)
ECMA 147

Appendix G. Product Warranties and Notices

International Business Machines Corporation

Armonk, New York 10504

Statement of Limited Warranty

The warranties provided by IBM in this Statement of Limited Warranty apply only to Machines you originally purchase for your use, and not for resale, from IBM or an IBM authorized reseller. The term "Machine" means an IBM machine, its features, conversions, upgrades, elements, or accessories, or any combination of them. Machines are subject to these terms only if purchased in the United States or Puerto Rico, or Canada, and located in the country of purchase. If you have any questions, contact IBM or your reseller.

Machine: IBM ThinkPad 760CD except the Battery Pack

Warranty Period*: Three Years

**Elements and accessories are warranted for three months. Contact your place of purchase for warranty service information.*

Production Status

Each Machine is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts (which perform like new parts). In some cases, the Machine may not be new and may have been previously installed. Regardless of the Machine's production status, IBM's warranty terms apply.

The IBM Warranty

IBM warrants that each Machine 1) is free from defects in materials and workmanship and 2) conforms to IBM's Official Published Specifications. IBM calculates the expiration of the warranty period from the Machine's Date of Installation. The date on your receipt is the Date of Installation, unless IBM or your reseller informs you otherwise.

During the warranty period, IBM or your reseller will provide warranty service under the type of service designated for the Machine and will manage and install engineering changes that apply to the Machine. IBM or your reseller will specify the type of service.

For a feature, conversion, or upgrade, IBM or your reseller may require that the Machine on which it is installed be 1) the designated, serial-numbered Machine and 2) at an engineering-change level compatible with the feature, conversion, or upgrade. Some of these transactions (called "Net-Priced" transactions) may include additional parts and associated replacement parts that are provided on an exchange basis. All removed parts become the property of IBM and must be returned to IBM.

Replacement parts assume the remaining warranty of the parts they replace.

If a Machine does not function as warranted during the warranty period, IBM or your reseller will repair or replace it (with a Machine that is at least functionally equivalent) without charge. If IBM or your reseller is unable to do so, you may return it to your place of purchase and your money will be refunded.

If you transfer a Machine to another user, warranty service is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should give your proof of purchase and this Statement to that user.

Warranty Service

To obtain warranty service for the Machine, you should contact your reseller or call IBM. In the United States, call IBM at **1-800-772-2227**. In Canada, call IBM at **1-800-565-3344**. You may be required to present proof of purchase.

Depending on the Machine, the service may be 1) a "Repair" service at your location (called "On-site") or at one of IBM's or a reseller's service locations (called "Carry-in") or 2) an "Exchange" service, either On-site or Carry-in.

Product Warranties and Notices

When a type of service involves the exchange of a Machine or part, the item IBM or your reseller replaces becomes its property and the replacement becomes yours. The replacement may not be new, but will be in good working order and at least functionally equivalent to the item replaced.

It is your responsibility to:

1. obtain authorization from the owner (for example, your lessor) to have IBM or your reseller service a Machine that you do not own;
2. where applicable, before service is provided —
 - a) follow the problem determination, problem analysis, and service request procedures that IBM or your reseller provide,
 - b) secure all programs, data, and funds contained in a Machine,
 - c) inform IBM or your reseller of changes in a Machine's location, and
 - d) for a Machine with exchange service, remove all features, parts, options, alterations, and attachments not under warranty service. Also, the Machine must be free of any legal obligations or restrictions that prevent its exchange; and
3. be responsible for loss of, or damage to, a Machine in transit when you are responsible for the transportation charges.

Extent of Warranty

IBM does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of a Machine.

Misuse, accident, modification, unsuitable physical or operating environment, improper maintenance by you, or failure caused by a product for which IBM is not responsible may void the warranties.

THESE WARRANTIES REPLACE ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. HOWEVER, SOME LAWS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES. IF THESE LAWS APPLY, THEN ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES APPLY AFTER THAT PERIOD.

In Canada, warranties include both warranties and conditions.

Some jurisdictions do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

Limitation of Liability

Circumstances may arise where, because of a default on IBM's part (including fundamental breach) or other liability (including negligence and misrepresentation), you are entitled to recover damages from IBM. In each such instance, regardless of the basis on which you are entitled to claim damages, IBM is liable only for:

1. bodily injury (including death), and damage to real property and tangible personal property; and
2. the amount of any other actual loss or damage, up to the greater of \$100,000 or the charge for the Machine that is the subject of the claim.

Under no circumstances is IBM liable for any of the following:

1. third-party claims against you for losses or damages (other than those under the first item listed above);
2. loss of, or damage to, your records or data; or
3. economic consequential damages (including lost profits or savings) or incidental damages, even if IBM is informed of their possibility.

Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction.

Product Warranties and Notices

International Business Machines Corporation

Armonk, New York 10504

Statement of Limited Warranty

The warranties provided by IBM in this Statement of Limited Warranty apply only to Machines you originally purchase for your use, and not for resale, from IBM or an IBM authorized reseller. The term "Machine" means an IBM machine, its features, conversions, upgrades, elements, or accessories, or any combination of them. Machines are subject to these terms only if purchased in the United States or Puerto Rico, or Canada, and located in the country of purchase. If you have any questions, contact IBM or your reseller.

Machine: Battery Pack

Warranty Period*: One Year

**Elements and accessories are warranted for three months. Contact your place of purchase for warranty service information.*

Production Status

Each Machine is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts (which perform like new parts). In some cases, the Machine may not be new and may have been previously installed. Regardless of the Machine's production status, IBM's warranty terms apply.

The IBM Warranty

IBM warrants that each Machine 1) is free from defects in materials and workmanship and 2) conforms to IBM's Official Published Specifications. IBM calculates the expiration of the warranty period from the Machine's Date of Installation. The date on your receipt is the Date of Installation, unless IBM or your reseller informs you otherwise.

During the warranty period, IBM or your reseller will provide warranty service under the type of service designated for the Machine and will manage and install engineering changes that apply to the Machine. IBM or your reseller will specify the type of service.

For a feature, conversion, or upgrade, IBM or your reseller may require that the Machine on which it is installed be 1) the designated, serial-numbered Machine and 2) at an engineering-change level compatible with the feature, conversion, or upgrade. Some of these transactions (called "Net-Priced" transactions) may include additional parts and associated replacement parts that are provided on an exchange basis. All removed parts become the property of IBM and must be returned to IBM.

Replacement parts assume the remaining warranty of the parts they replace.

If a Machine does not function as warranted during the warranty period, IBM or your reseller will repair or replace it (with a Machine that is at least functionally equivalent) without charge. If IBM or your reseller is unable to do so, you may return it to your place of purchase and your money will be refunded.

If you transfer a Machine to another user, warranty service is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should give your proof of purchase and this Statement to that user.

Warranty Service

To obtain warranty service for the Machine, you should contact your reseller or call IBM. In the United States, call IBM at **1-800-772-2227**. In Canada, call IBM at **1-800-565-3344**. You may be required to present proof of purchase.

Depending on the Machine, the service may be 1) a "Repair" service at your location (called "On-site") or at one of IBM's or a reseller's service locations (called "Carry-in") or 2) an "Exchange" service, either On-site or Carry-in.

Product Warranties and Notices

When a type of service involves the exchange of a Machine or part, the item IBM or your reseller replaces becomes its property and the replacement becomes yours. The replacement may not be new, but will be in good working order and at least functionally equivalent to the item replaced.

It is your responsibility to:

1. obtain authorization from the owner (for example, your lessor) to have IBM or your reseller service a Machine that you do not own;
2. where applicable, before service is provided —
 - a) follow the problem determination, problem analysis, and service request procedures that IBM or your reseller provide,
 - b) secure all programs, data, and funds contained in a Machine,
 - c) inform IBM or your reseller of changes in a Machine's location, and
 - d) for a Machine with exchange service, remove all features, parts, options, alterations, and attachments not under warranty service. Also, the Machine must be free of any legal obligations or restrictions that prevent its exchange; and
3. be responsible for loss of, or damage to, a Machine in transit when you are responsible for the transportation charges.

Extent of Warranty

IBM does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of a Machine.

Misuse, accident, modification, unsuitable physical or operating environment, improper maintenance by you, or failure caused by a product for which IBM is not responsible may void the warranties.

THESE WARRANTIES REPLACE ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. HOWEVER, SOME LAWS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES. IF THESE LAWS APPLY, THEN ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES APPLY AFTER THAT PERIOD.

In Canada, warranties include both warranties and conditions.

Some jurisdictions do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

Limitation of Liability

Circumstances may arise where, because of a default on IBM's part (including fundamental breach) or other liability (including negligence and misrepresentation), you are entitled to recover damages from IBM. In each such instance, regardless of the basis on which you are entitled to claim damages, IBM is liable only for:

1. bodily injury (including death), and damage to real property and tangible personal property; and
2. the amount of any other actual loss or damage, up to the greater of \$100,000 or the charge for the Machine that is the subject of the claim.

Under no circumstances is IBM liable for any of the following:

1. third-party claims against you for losses or damages (other than those under the first item listed above);
2. loss of, or damage to, your records or data; or
3. economic consequential damages (including lost profits or savings) or incidental damages, even if IBM is informed of their possibility.

Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction.

Notices

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any of the intellectual property rights of IBM may be used instead of the IBM product, program, or service. The evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, except those expressly designated by IBM, are the responsibility of the user.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, 500 Columbus Avenue, Thornwood, NY 10594, U.S.A.

Trademarks

The following terms, in this publication, are trademarks of the IBM Corporation in the United States and/or other countries:

AT	IBM
Multimedia Presentation Manager/2	MMPM/2
Mwave	Operating System/2
OS/2	OS/2 Warp
PS/2	ThinkPad
TrackPoint III	Win-OS/2

The following terms, denoted by a double asterisk (**) in this publication, are trademarks of other companies as follows:

America Online	America Online, Inc.
Bell	AT&T Bell Laboratories
Centronics	Centronics Data Computer Corporation
Compuserve	Compuserve, Inc.
Hewlett Packard	Hewlett Packard Corporation
Hayes	Hayes Corporation
Indeo	Intel Corporation
Intel	Intel Corporation

Product Warranties and Notices

IntelDX4	Intel Corporation
Kensington	Kensington Microware, Inc.
MCI	Microsoft Corporation
MicroSaver	Kensington Microware, Inc.
MNP	Microcomm, Inc.
Microsoft	Microsoft Corporation
MS-DOS	Microsoft Corporation
Omnibook	Hewlett Packard Corporation
PCMCIA	Personal Computer Memory Card International Association
Phoenix	Phoenix Technologies, Ltd.
Prodigy	PRODIGY Services
Prosonus	Prosonus, Inc.
QEMM	Quarterdeck Office Systems
QSound	QSound, Inc.
Sharp	Sharp Corporation
Sound Blaster	Creative Labs, Inc.
Video for Windows	Microsoft Corporation
Western Digital	Western Digital Corporation
Windows	Microsoft Corporation
Wizard	Sharp Corporation
386MAX	Qualitas, Inc.
100LX	Hewlett Packard Corporation
200LX	Hewlett Packard Corporation

Electronic Emission Notice

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult an IBM authorized dealer or service representative for help.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. Proper cables and connectors are available from IBM authorized dealers. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Product Warranties and Notices

Canadian Department of Communications Compliance Statement

This equipment does not exceed Class B limits per radio noise emissions for digital apparatus, set out in the Radio Interference Regulation of the Canadian Department of Communications.

Avis de conformité aux normes du ministère des Communications du Canada

Cet équipement ne dépasse pas les limites de Classe B d'émission de bruits radioélectriques pour les appareils numériques, telles que prescrites par le Règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique établi par le ministère des Communications du Canada.

European Community Directive Conformance Statement

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electro-magnetic compatibility.

A declaration of Conformity with the requirements of the Directive has been signed by IBM United Kingdom Limited, PO BOX 30 Spango Valley Greenock Scotland PA160AH.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022.

Telecommunication Notice

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Telephone Company Requirements (Part 68 of the FCC Rules)

1. The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual.

In order to program this information into your computer, you should be sure to follow the installation instructions for your fax software package.

2. The built-in modem is built into the ThinkPad computer. It complies with Part 68 of the FCC Rules. A label is affixed to the bottom of the computer that contains, among other things, the FCC registration number, USOC, and Ringer Equivalency Number (REN) for this equipment. If these numbers are requested, look at the label and provide this information to your telephone company.
3. The REN is useful to determine the quantity of devices you may connect to your telephone line and still have those devices ring when your number is called. In most, but not all, areas, the sum of the RENs of all devices should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices you may connect to your line, as determined by the REN, you should call your local telephone company to determine the maximum REN for your calling area.
4. If the built-in modem causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may discontinue your service temporarily. If possible, they will notify you in advance. But, if advance notice isn't practical, you will be notified as soon as possible. You will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

Product Warranties and Notices

5. Your telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the proper operation of your equipment. If they do, you will be given advance notice so as to give you an opportunity to maintain uninterrupted service.
6. If you experience trouble with this built-in modem, contact your IBM Authorized Seller, or the IBM Corporation, 500 Columbus Avenue, Thornwood, NY 10594, 1-800-772-2227, for repair/warranty information. The telephone company may ask you to disconnect this equipment from the network until the problem has been corrected, or until you are sure the equipment is not malfunctioning.
7. No customer repairs are possible to the modem. If you experience trouble with this equipment, contact your Authorized Seller or the IBM Corporation for information.
8. The modem may not be used on coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to party lines is subject to state tariffs. Contact your state public utility commission or corporation commission for information.
9. When ordering network interface (NI) service from the Local Exchange Carrier, specify service arrangement USOC RJ11C.

Glossary

This glossary includes terms and definitions from the *IBM Dictionary of Computing* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994).

ac. Alternating current.

ac power. Power that is supplied to the computer through an electrical outlet.

ANSI. American National Standards Institute.

application program. A program that performs specific tasks on your computer, such as word processing or creating spreadsheets.

Advanced Power Management (APM). A facility consisting of one or more layers of software that support power management in computers with power manageable hardware. The APM software interface allows applications, operating systems, device drivers, and the APM BIOS to work together to reduce power consumption, without reducing system performance.

ASCII. American National Standard Code for Information Interchange.

ATA PC Card. A PC Card with an AT attachment hard disk drive interface such as a storage device PC Card.

AUTOEXEC.BAT. A file that contains a startup procedure of DOS. Each time you start your system, DOS performs the commands that are stored in this file.

backup copy. A copy, usually of a file or group of files, that is kept in case the original file or files are unintentionally changed or destroyed.

batch. A process method in which a program or programs records with little or no operator action.

BIOS (Basic Input/Output System).

Microcode that contains such basic hardware operations as interactions with diskette drives, hard disk drives, and the keyboard.

bitmap graphics. (1) A form of graphics in which all points on the display are directly addressable. (2) In multimedia applications, a form of graphics in an area of computer memory or storage that can be displayed as an image.

boot. To prepare a computer system for operation by loading an operating system.

bps. Bits per second. In serial transmission, the instantaneous bit speed with which a device or channel transmits a character.

bus. A facility for transferring data between several devices located between two end points, only one device being able to transmit at a given moment.

cache memory. A special memory, smaller and faster than main memory, that is used to hold a copy of instructions and data in main memory that are likely to be needed next by the processor, and that have been obtained automatically from main memory.

CD-I. Compact disc-interactive.

combination keys. Keys that have specific functions when you hold them down at the same time.

configuration. (1) The manner in which the hardware and software of an information processing system are organized and interconnected. (2) The physical and logical arrangement of devices and programs that make up a data processing system. (3) The devices and programs that make up a system, subsystem, or network.

Glossary

CONFIG.SYS. A file that contains a group of commands to load installable device drivers and reserve space in system memory for information processing. This file is referred to by DOS during system startup.

CRT. Cathode ray tube display.

device driver. A file that contains the code needed to attach and use a device. Operating system loads device drivers for screens, keyboards, printers, diskette drives, hard disk drives, and auxiliary devices. The user can replace these or add other devices by coding and loading a device driver.

DIMM. Dual inline memory module.

directory. A type of file containing the names and controlling information for other files or other directories.

DMA. Direct memory access. The transfer of data between memory and input/output units without processor intervention.

double-click. To press and release a mouse button twice within a time frame defined by the user, without moving the pointer off the choice.

DSP. Digital signal processor.

EGA. Enhanced graphics adapter.

EIA. Electronics Industries Association.

EIA-232D. An EIA interface standard that defines the physical, electronic, and functional characteristics of an interface line that connects a communication device and associated workstation. It uses a 25-pin connector and an unbalanced line voltage.

EMS. Expanded memory specification.

fax. (1) Facsimile machine. (2) A transmitted document from a facsimile machine.

fixed disk. In personal computing, *fixed disk* is synonymous with *hard disk*.

flash memory. Electrically rewritable storage.

folder. A file used to store and organize documents.

fuel gauge. An indicator on the screen that constantly shows the current power status of the battery pack.

HHR. Half-horizontal resolution.

hibernation. One of the power-saving methods that stores data and applications running in the computer's memory on the hard disk. During hibernation, the computer is automatically turned off to save power. When power is turned on again, the computer immediately restores the same data and applications as when hibernation started, without restarting the operating system.

high-resolution mode. Video resolutions that are greater than 640 by 480 pels.

icon. A graphic symbol, displayed on a screen, that a user can point to with a pointing device such as a TrackPoint III or mouse to select a particular function or software application.

IR. Infrared.

ISA. Industry standard architecture.

ISO. International Organization for Standardization.

JEIDA. Japan Electronics Industry Development Association.

kilobyte (KB). 1024 bytes.

LAN. Local area network.

MCI. Media Control Interface

megabyte (MB). 1024 kilobytes. About 1 million bytes.

memory. Often referred to as random-access memory (RAM), measured in kilobytes (KB) or megabytes (MB) of information.

MHz. Megahertz.

microcode. One or more microinstructions used in a product as an alternative to hard-wired circuitry to implement functions of a processor or other system component.

MIDI. Musical Instrument Digital Interface.

modem. A device that connects your computer to a telephone line, allowing it to communicate with another computer at another location.

MPEG. Moving Pictures Experts Group

parallel port. A port used to attach such devices as dot-matrix printers and input/output units; it transmits data 1 byte at a time.

partial suspend mode. A kind of suspend mode where only a part of the system components uses power.

password. A series of letters or numbers that you designate to restrict access to your computer.

PC Card. A card that is based on the PCMCIA standard.

PCMCIA. Personal Computer Memory Card International Association.

pel. Picture element.

picture element. In computer graphics, the smallest element of a display surface that can be independently assigned color and intensity.

pixel. Picture element.

pointing device. An instrument, such as a mouse, TrackPoint III, or joystick, that is used to move a pointer on the screen.

POST. Power-on self-test.

pop-up menu. On the display screen, a menu that emerges in an upward direction from a particular point or line on a display screen.

prompt. A visual or audible message sent by a program to request the user's response.

pull-down menu. On the display screen, a menu that emerges in a downward direction from a point or line at or near the top of the screen.

reboot. Restart all operations of the computer as if the power were just turned on.

resume. To begin computer operations again from suspend mode.

ROM. Read-only memory.

serial port. A port used to attach such devices as display devices, letter-quality printers, modems, plotters, and such pointing devices as light pens and mice; it transmits data 1 bit at a time.

suspend. Stops all operations of the computer to reduce power drain and restrict access to the files.

SVGA. Super video graphics adapter.

TFT. Thin film transistor.



Index



TSRs. Terminate-and-stay-resident programs, memory-resident programs that are loaded into memory and stay there so you can conveniently access them whenever you need to.

vertical expansion. A video display technique in character-display mode to fit video images on the whole LCD screen

by adjusting the number of character dots vertically.

VESA. Video Electronics Standards Association.

VGA. Video graphics adapter, a video mode that produces up to 640-by-480 resolution.

XMS. Extended memory specification.



A

- AC Adapter 23
 - cable, wrapping 24
 - voltage 23
- advanced power management,
Windows 233
- APM 121
- AT bus 326
- ATA Card Mount Utility 65
- attaching
 - Dock I or II 199
 - expansion unit 199
 - external display 194
 - external keyboard 193
 - external numeric keypad 191
 - joystick 106
 - MIDI equipment 106
 - mouse 191
 - video equipment 83
- audio
 - Mwave, using 71
- audio features
 - additional information 307
 - problems 271
- Auto Configurator Utility 289

B

- battery pack 24
 - charging 108
 - discharging
 - cancelling, for OS/2 and
Windows 119
 - for OS/2 and Windows 119
 - fuel-gauge program, using 116
 - installing, secondary battery
pack 176
 - lamp 20
 - LCD indicator 21
 - location 19
 - low-battery condition 114
 - maximizing battery-powered
operation 120
 - monitoring battery power
 - battery status indicator,
using 112

- battery pack (*continued*)
 - monitoring battery power (*continued*)
 - fuel-gauge program, using 116
 - operating time 24
 - preserving battery-pack life 120
 - problems 264
 - replacing the battery pack 110
- boot, selectable 49
- brightness control
 - location 17
- broken keylock 262
- bus, system 325

C

- caps lock indicator 22
- car battery adapter 25
- carrying the computer 34
- CD-ROM drive 19
 - bezel
 - installing 178
 - removing 184
 - device driver
 - for DOS, installing 224
 - for OS/2, installing 212
 - handling 105
 - in-use lamp 20
 - installing other options 184
 - playing media 104
 - problems 265
 - using 102
- CD-ROM emergency eject 19
- changing password
 - hard disk password 142
 - power-on password 137
 - supervisor password 146
- charging, battery pack 108
 - devices
 - quick charger 109
- click buttons (TrackPoint III)
 - using 26
- Config menu
 - Easy-Setup 45
- connector door 19
- considerations

Index

considerations (*continued*)

- hibernation 131
- PC Card 127
- suspend mode 127

- control power 57

D

date and time

- Easy-Setup 46
- prompt 37

device driver

- CD-ROM device driver
 - for DOS, installing 224
 - for OS/2, installing 212
- enhanced video device driver
 - for OS/2, installing 220
 - for Windows, installing 244
- infrared device driver
 - for OS/2, installing 218
 - for Windows, installing 243
- Mwave DSP support software
 - for DOS, installing 230
 - for OS/2, installing 216
 - for Windows, installing 240
- PCMCIA device driver
 - for DOS, installing 228, 238
 - for OS/2, installing 215
- video CD player
 - for Windows, installing 247
- video features diskette
 - for OS/2, installing 223
 - for Windows, installing 248

- DIMM 166

- DIMM adapter 166

- diskette drive 19
 - bezel, installing 99
 - in use, indicator 21
 - installing 99
 - problems 266

- diskette standards 330

- display 30

- LCD
 - PS2 command 315
 - switching to 52

display (*continued*)

- problems 30
- SVGA
 - installing, for Windows 233
- switching, using Fn key 52
- using 30

Dock I or II

- attaching 199
- speaker volume control, using Fn key 52

DOS Version 7.0 or later

- hibernation file, creating 130
- installing 224
 - CD-ROM device driver 224
 - Mwave DSP support software 230
 - PC Card Director 228
 - PCMCIA device driver 228
 - ThinkPad features 227
- starting PC Card Director 67
- ThinkPad features, starting 42

- drive-startup sequence 49

DSP

- See Mwave DSP function

E

Easy-Setup

- Config menu 45
- date and time menu 46
- main menu 44
- password menu 46
- restart menu 48
- start up menu 47
- test menu 47
- using 44

enhanced video features

- device driver
 - for OS/2, installing 220
 - for Windows, installing 244

enhanced video/MPEG features

- MPEG playback, using 86
- problems 266
- smooth playback, using 84
- using 83

enhanced video/MPEG features
(continued)
 video capture 90
 video-in port, using 90
 video-out port, using 88
 error codes 257
 Ethernet RPL speed 50
 expansion unit
 attaching 199
 speaker volume control, using Fn
 key 52
 external devices
 consideration, in suspend mode 127
 Dock I or II 199
 external display 194
 external keyboard 193
 external numeric keypad 191
 external unit 199
 modem/fax port 187
 mouse 191
 external display
 attaching 194
 color depth, changing 197
 display driver
 for OS/2, installing 223
 for Windows, installing 248
 display driver, setting 196
 problems 30
 screen resolution, changing 197
 using 30
 external keyboard
 attaching 193
 external numeric keypad
 attaching 191
 external-diskette-drive connector 19
 external-display connector 19
 external-input-device connector 17
 ezplay command, for DOS 67

F

features 325
 Fn key
 function 51
 location 17

Fn Key Lock Fn key 51
 fuel-gauge program
 Fn key function, using 51
 monitoring battery status 116
 using 116

H

hard disk drive 19
 hibernation mode, in 129
 in use, indicator 21
 installing, secondary hard disk 180
 replacing 173
 securing, with password 139
 several hard disk drives,
 using 149
 hard disk password
 changing 142
 prompt 37
 removing 143
 setting 140
 using 139
 with power-on password 139
 with supervisor password 144
 wrong hard disk password,
 entering 141
 hardware conflicts 283
 hardware features 16—19
 hardware specifications 327
 headphone jack 19
 heat output, machine specifications 327
 HelpClub
 for Europe 281
 for U.S.A. 279
 Helpware
 for Europe 281
 for U.S.A. 279
 hibernation
 considerations 131
 creating hibernation file 129
 for DOS 130
 for OS/2 and Windows 129
 file, creating 129
 PS2 command 320
 using 129

Index

hibernation (*continued*)
 using Fn key function 52
 humidity, machine specifications 327

I
 identification numbers, recording 278
 indicator panel 20
 information notices
 caution notices vii
 danger notices vii
 notes vii
 warning notices vii
 infrared features
 device driver
 for OS/2, installing 218
 for Windows, installing 243
 using 68
 infrared port
 location 17, 19
 problems 268
 initialize
 Easy-Setup 45
 input voltage 327
 installing
 DIMM 166
 hard disk drive 173
 modem/fax port 187
 PC Card 163
 secondary battery pack 176
 secondary hard disk 180
 software 202
 internal devices
 in UltraBay 184

K
 Kensington lock
 keyhole 17
 using 155
 keyboard
 location 17
 release latch 17
 specifications 325
 keyboard/mouse connector 193

L
 lamp 20
 launcher, program 60
 LCD
 location 17
 problems 30, 259
 lithium ion battery pack 24
 locations
 external input-device connector 6
 external-display connector 6
 headphone jack 6
 infrared ports 6
 locking device keyhole 6
 memory slot 6
 microphone/line-in jack 6
 midi/joystick port 6
 modem/fax port 6
 parallel connector 6
 PCMCIA slot 6
 serial connector 6
 system expansion connector 6
 video in/out ports 6
 lock
 Kensington lock 155
 PC Card lock 157
 low-battery condition 114

M
 maximizing battery power
 decreasing LCD brightness 123
 using Advanced Power
 Management 121
 using power management 123
 memory
 Easy-Setup 45
 increasing capacity 166
 specifications 325
 memory area 63
 memory module (DIMM) 166
 memory slot
 cover 19
 location 19
 messages on screen 261

- microphone (built-in) 17
- microphone/line-in jack 19
- microprocessor
 - specifications 325
- MIDI
 - overview 308
- MIDI, playing sequencer files 77
- MIDI/Joystick port
 - location 19
 - using 106
- modem
 - PC Card
 - installing 163
 - removing 165
 - problems 271
 - modem/fax port 19
 - installing 187
 - location 19
 - release latch 19
- mouse
 - attaching 191
 - using with
 - Space Saver Keyboard 192
 - TrackPoint III 191
- MPEG
 - specifications 321
 - using 83
- Mwave DSP function
 - additional information 307
 - MIDI mapper 308
 - MIDI synthesizer 308
 - problems 271
 - support software
 - for DOS, installing 230
 - for OS/2, installing 216
 - for Windows, installing 240
 - using 71
- Mwave DSP support software
 - installing, for DOS 230
 - installing, for OS/2 216
 - installing, for Windows 240

N

- notices and warranties, product 331
- numeric keypad 29
- numeric lock indicator 21

O

- online book 32
- operating systems
 - installing
 - DOS Version 7.0 or later 224
 - OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later 204, 205
 - Windows Version 3.11 or later 232, 233
- option cover
 - location 19
 - removing 184
- options
 - CD-ROM drive
 - removing 99
 - using 102
 - DIMM
 - installing 166
 - removing 166
 - diskette drive
 - problems 266
 - Dock I or II
 - attaching 199
 - expansion unit
 - attaching 199
 - external display
 - attaching 194
 - problems 267
 - external keyboard, attaching 193
 - external numeric keypad
 - attaching 191
 - problems 270
 - hard disk drive, replacing 173
 - in UltraBay 184
 - keyboard
 - problems 270
 - modem/fax port
 - installing 187

Index

options (*continued*)
 mouse
 attaching 191
 PC Card (PCMCIA Card)
 inserting 163
 problems 274
 removing 165
 using 53
 pointing device
 problems 270
 printer
 problems 275
 problems 273
 secondary battery pack,
 installing 176
 secondary hard disk drive,
 installing 180
 OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later 205
 Auto Configurator Utility 289
 hibernation file, creating 129
 installing
 CD-ROM device driver 212
 display driver 223
 enhanced video device
 driver 220
 infrared device driver 218
 Mwave DSP support
 software 216
 PC Card Director 215
 PCMCIA device driver 215
 ThinkPad features 214
 PCMCIA storage card device
 driver 298
 ThinkPad features, starting 39

P

palm rest 17
 parallel connector 19
 part numbers, power cords 328
 password 46
 Easy-Setup 46
 hard disk password
 changing 142
 power-on password, using
 with 139

password (*continued*)
 hard disk password (*continued*)
 removing 143
 setting 140
 using 139
 wrong, entering 141
 personalization feature, using
 with 151
 power-on password
 changing 137
 hard disk password, using
 with 139
 removing 138
 setting 134
 using 134
 wrong, entering 136
 supervisor password
 changing 146
 hard disk password, using
 with 144
 removing 148
 setting 145
 several hard disk drives,
 using 149
 using 144
 wrong, entering 146
 PC Card 228
 ATA Card Mount Utility 65
 Auto Configurator Utility 289
 changing registered order 291
 changing resource information 292
 eject button 17
 for advanced use 289
 installing 163
 not registering a card 290
 power, setting 59
 registered list 62
 registering a card 290
 registration and standard rules
 for DOS and Windows 296
 registration and standard rules,
 CONFIG.SYS
 for OS/2 294
 remote program load 286
 removing 165

- PC Card (*continued*)
 - resource conflicts, avoiding 305
 - resources, checking 303
 - securing 157
 - slot 17
 - software considerations
 - under suspend 53
 - suspend mode, using with 127
 - system boot up 286
 - using 53
- PC Card Director
 - installing, for DOS 228
 - installing, for OS/2 215
 - installing, for Windows 238
 - using 54
- PCMCIA card
 - See* PC Card
- PCMCIA device driver
 - for DOS, installing 228
 - for OS/2, installing 215
 - for Windows, installing 238
- PCMCIA slot
 - location 17
- personalization feature 151
- pointing device 191
- power
 - for the PC Card 59
- power cords 328
- power jack
 - location 19
- power management
 - using 123
- power mode
 - switching, using Fn key 52
- power shutdown switch 19
- power switch 19
- power-on lamp 20
- power-on password
 - changing 137
 - hard disk password, using with 139
 - prompt 37
 - removing 138
 - setting 134
 - using 134
 - wrong power-on password,
 - entering 136
- power, setting 59
- preserving battery pack life 120
- printer
 - consideration, in suspend mode 127
- problems
 - battery pack 264
 - CD-ROM drive 265
 - common 251
 - diskette drive 266
 - Enhanced Video/MPEG features 266
 - error codes 257
 - external display 31, 267
 - external numeric keypad 270
 - general 262
 - hibernation, entering 268
 - infrared communication 268
 - keyboard 270
 - LCD 31, 259
 - messages on screen 261
 - modem 271
 - Mwave DSP function 271
 - options 273
 - PC Card 274
 - pointing device 270
 - printer 275
 - software 276
 - test cannot find problem 264
 - testing the computer 255
 - TrackPoint III 270
 - troubleshooting charts 257
 - battery pack 264
 - diskette drive 266
 - external display 267
 - external numeric keypad 270
 - keyboard 270
 - LCD problems 259
 - messages on screen 261
 - options 273
 - pointing device 270
 - printer 275
 - software 268, 276
- PS2 commands 313
 - address of DSP 318
 - automatic power saving timer
 - hibernation 317

Index

PS2 commands (*continued*)

- automatic power-saving timer 316
 - suspend 317
- beep on/off 318
- default 314
- discharge 314
- DMA information 318
- DOCK 314
- enhanced video 317
- expansion, horizontal/vertical 317
- frequency, external display 317
- hard disk drive, power saving 314
- HFILE 315
- hibernate from suspend 316
- hibernation, entering 320
- HTIMER 315
- HVEXP by Fn+F8 318
- internal modem, power for 318
- interrupt level information 319
- keyboard typematic speed 319
- LCD power-off 315
- low battery
 - hibernation, entering 315
 - suspend, entering 315
- MIDI/joystick port, enable 319
- MIDI/joystick port, enabling 319
- PCMCIA slot, power 314
- power mode 316
- power switch, hibernate 315
- power to serial port 319
- presentation 319
- processor speed rate 316
- resume date and time 316
- resuming by the ring indicator 316
- serial port 316
- speaker balance, expansion unit 318
- speaker indicator on/off 318
- speaker volume, expansion unit 318
- standby mode, timer 317
- startup screen 320
- suspend mode, entering 314, 320
- TrackPoint III 320

R

- rear door 19
- record of identification numbers 278
- release latch
 - locations 17
- removable
 - CD-ROM drive 19
 - diskette drive 19
 - hard disk drive 19
- removing
 - battery pack 110
 - bezel 184
 - DIMM 166
 - hard disk drive 173
 - hard disk password 143
 - modem/fax port 187
 - option cover 184
 - PC Card 165
 - PC Card lock 159
 - power-on password 138
 - supervisor password 148
- repair services
 - getting service 277
 - HelpClub 279, 281
 - identification numbers 278
- restart menu
 - Easy-Setup 48
- RPL (remote program load) 49

S

- safety notices
- screen expansion 31
- screen messages
 - date and time prompt 37
 - F1 and diskette prompts 37
 - hard disk password prompt 37
 - power-on password prompt 37
 - power-on self test (POST) error 37
- scroll lock indicator 22
- security
 - Kensington lock 155
 - password, security with
 - hard disk password 139
 - power-on password 134

- security (*continued*)
 - password, security with (*continued*)
 - supervisor password 144
 - PC Card 157
 - personalization feature 151
 - security lock
 - See Kensington lock
 - serial connector
 - location 19
 - serial device
 - consideration, in suspend mode 127
 - serial number 19, 278
 - service
 - HelpClub 279, 281
 - how to get 277
 - installed options 278
 - set memory area 57
 - set status notice 57
 - setting password
 - hard disk password 140
 - power-on password 134
 - supervisor password 145
 - shipped items 4
 - size, machine specifications 327
 - software
 - needed 202
 - problems 276
 - speaker (built-in)
 - location 17
 - speaker indicator 21
 - specifications
 - battery pack 328
 - heat output 327
 - humidity, environment 327
 - input voltage 327
 - size 327
 - temperature, environment 327
 - weight 327
 - standards, diskette 330
 - standby mode
 - Fn key function, using 51
 - using 125
 - start up menu
 - Easy-Setup 47
 - start up, changing 49
 - starting the computer 37
 - storage card device driver 298
 - storage, machine specifications 325
 - supervisor password
 - changing 146
 - hard disk password, using with 144
 - removing 148
 - setting 145
 - several hard disk drives, using 149
 - using 144
 - wrong, entering 146
 - suspend mode
 - considerations 127
 - Fn key function, using 51
 - PS2 command 320
 - using 125
 - suspend-mode lamp 20
 - SVGA
 - setting 194
 - system bus, machine specifications 325
 - system-expansion connector
 - location 19
 - system-status indicators 20
 - battery lamp 20
 - battery status 21
 - caps lock 22
 - CD-ROM drive in-use 20
 - diskette drive in use 21
 - hard disk in use 21
 - numeric lock 21
 - power on 20
 - scroll lock 22
 - speaker 21
 - suspend mode lamp 20
 - systemboard
 - Easy-Setup 45
- ## T
- telephony
 - using 71
 - temperature, machine
 - specifications 327
 - test menu
 - Easy-Setup 47

Index

- testing the computer 255
 - ThinkPad audio features
 - audio and its use 74
 - ThinkPad features
 - installing 214, 227
 - DOS Version 7.0 or later 227
 - OS/2 Warp Version 3 or later 214
 - Windows Version 3.11 or later 237
 - personalization utilities menu 38
 - PS2 commands 313
 - starting 39
 - for DOS 42
 - for OS/2 and Windows 39
 - ThinkPad view 40
 - token-ring RPL speed 50
 - TrackPoint III
 - cleaning 28
 - location 17
 - using 26
 - troubleshooting charts 257
- ## U
- UltraBay
 - battery pack, installing 176
 - hard disk, installing 180
 - location 17
 - options, installing 184
 - UMB, setting 63
- ## V
- video
 - device driver
 - for OS/2, installing 220
 - for Windows, installing 244
 - in/out ports, using 83
 - MPEG 86
 - smooth playback, using 84
 - video capture 90
 - video CD player, for Windows 247
 - video-in port, using 90
 - video-out port, using 88
 - video features diskette
 - installing
 - for OS/2 223
 - Windows 248
 - video in/out ports
 - location 19
 - view card list 57
 - view card services resources 57
 - volume control
 - location 17
- ## W
- warranties and notices, product 331
 - weight, machine specifications 327
 - Windows
 - Auto Configurator Utility 289
 - Windows Version 3.11 or later
 - hibernation file, creating 129
 - installing 233
 - display driver 248
 - enhanced video device driver 220, 244
 - infrared device driver 243
 - Mwave DSP support software 240
 - PC Card Director 238
 - PCMCIA device driver 238
 - ThinkPad features 237
 - video CD player 247
 - ThinkPad features, starting 39